

IBM Spectrum Protect
for Linux
Version 8.1.10

Installation Guide



Note:

Before you use this information and the product it supports, read the information in [“Notices” on page 191.](#)

This edition applies to version 8, release 1, modification 10 of IBM Spectrum® Protect (product numbers 5725-W98, 5725-W99, 5725-X15), and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1993, 2020.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

| | |
|---|------------|
| About this publication..... | vii |
| Who should read this guide..... | vii |
| Installable components..... | vii |
| Publications | viii |
| What's new..... | ix |
| Part 1. Installing and upgrading the server..... | 1 |
| Chapter 1. Planning to install the IBM Spectrum Protect server..... | 3 |
| What you should know first..... | 3 |
| What you should know about security before you install or upgrade the server..... | 3 |
| Applying security updates..... | 7 |
| Troubleshooting security updates..... | 12 |
| Planning for optimal performance..... | 17 |
| Planning server hardware and operating system..... | 17 |
| Planning server database disks..... | 21 |
| Planning server recovery log disks..... | 23 |
| Planning container storage pools..... | 24 |
| Planning DISK or FILE storage pools..... | 34 |
| Planning storage technology..... | 37 |
| Installation best practices..... | 39 |
| Minimum system requirements..... | 40 |
| Minimum Linux x86_64 server requirements..... | 41 |
| Minimum Linux on System z server requirements..... | 44 |
| Minimum Linux on Power Systems (little endian) server requirements..... | 47 |
| Compatibility of the IBM Spectrum Protect server with other IBM Db2 products on the system..... | 49 |
| IBM Installation Manager..... | 50 |
| Worksheets for planning details for the server..... | 51 |
| Capacity planning..... | 52 |
| Database space requirements..... | 52 |
| Recovery log space requirements..... | 55 |
| Monitoring space utilization for the database and recovery logs..... | 66 |
| Deleting installation rollback files | 67 |
| Server naming best practices..... | 68 |
| Installation directories for the IBM Spectrum Protect server..... | 69 |
| Chapter 2. Installing the server components..... | 71 |
| Obtaining the installation package..... | 71 |
| Using the installation wizard..... | 72 |
| Using the console installation wizard..... | 73 |
| Using silent mode..... | 73 |
| Installing server language packages..... | 74 |
| Server language locales..... | 74 |
| Configuring a language package..... | 75 |
| Updating a language package..... | 76 |
| Chapter 3. Taking the first steps after you install IBM Spectrum Protect..... | 77 |
| Tuning kernel parameters..... | 77 |
| Updating parameters..... | 77 |

| | |
|---|----------------|
| Suggested settings | 78 |
| Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance..... | 78 |
| Configuring the IBM Spectrum Protect server..... | 80 |
| Using the configuration wizard..... | 80 |
| Using the manual configuration steps..... | 81 |
| Configuring server options for server database maintenance..... | 88 |
| Starting the server instance..... | 89 |
| Verifying access rights and user limits..... | 89 |
| Starting the server from the instance user ID..... | 91 |
| Automatically starting servers on Linux systems..... | 91 |
| Starting the server in maintenance mode..... | 93 |
| Stopping the server..... | 94 |
| Registering licenses..... | 94 |
| Preparing the server for database backup operations | 94 |
| Running multiple server instances on a single system..... | 95 |
| Monitoring the server..... | 95 |
| Chapter 4. Installing an IBM Spectrum Protect fix pack..... | 97 |
| Chapter 5. Upgrading the server to V8.1..... | 101 |
| Upgrading to V8.1..... | 101 |
| Planning the upgrade..... | 102 |
| Preparing the system..... | 102 |
| Installing the server and verifying the upgrade..... | 104 |
| Upgrading the server in a clustered environment..... | 107 |
| Upgrading IBM Spectrum Protect in a clustered environment | 107 |
| Chapter 6. Reference: Db2 commands for server databases..... | 109 |
| Chapter 7. Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect..... | 113 |
| Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect by using a graphical wizard..... | 113 |
| Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect in console mode..... | 113 |
| Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode..... | 114 |
| Uninstalling and reinstalling IBM Spectrum Protect..... | 114 |
| Uninstalling IBM Installation Manager..... | 115 |
| Part 2. Installing and upgrading the Operations Center..... | 117 |
| Chapter 8. Planning to install the Operations Center..... | 119 |
| System requirements for the Operations Center..... | 119 |
| Operations Center computer requirements..... | 120 |
| Hub and spoke server requirements..... | 120 |
| Operating system requirements..... | 123 |
| Web browser requirements..... | 123 |
| Language requirements..... | 124 |
| Requirements and limitations for IBM Spectrum Protect client management services..... | 124 |
| Administrator IDs that the Operations Center requires..... | 126 |
| IBM Installation Manager..... | 126 |
| Installation checklist..... | 127 |
| Chapter 9. Installing the Operations Center..... | 131 |
| Obtaining the Operations Center installation package..... | 131 |
| Installing the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard..... | 131 |
| Installing the Operations Center in console mode..... | 132 |
| Installing the Operations Center in silent mode..... | 132 |
| Encrypting passwords in silent installation response files..... | 133 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| Chapter 10. Upgrading the Operations Center..... | 135 |
| Chapter 11. Getting started with the Operations Center..... | 137 |
| Configuring the Operations Center..... | 137 |
| Designating the hub server..... | 137 |
| Adding a spoke server..... | 138 |
| Sending email alerts to administrators..... | 139 |
| Adding customized text to the login screen..... | 141 |
| Configuring the Operations Center web server to use the standard TCP/IP secure port..... | 142 |
| Enabling REST services..... | 143 |
| Configuring for secure communication..... | 143 |
| Between the Operations Center and the hub server..... | 143 |
| Between the hub server and a spoke server..... | 145 |
| Between the Operations Center and web browsers..... | 147 |
| Deleting and reassigning the password for the Operations Center truststore file..... | 158 |
| Starting and stopping the web server..... | 160 |
| Opening the Operations Center..... | 160 |
| Collecting diagnostic information with the client management service..... | 161 |
| Installing the client management service by using a graphical wizard..... | 161 |
| Installing the client management service in silent mode..... | 162 |
| Verifying the installation..... | 163 |
| Configuring the Operations Center to use the client management service..... | 164 |
| Starting and stopping the client management service..... | 165 |
| Uninstalling the client management service..... | 166 |
| Configuring the client management service for custom client installations..... | 166 |
| Chapter 12. Troubleshooting the Operations Center installation..... | 181 |
| Chinese, Japanese, or Korean fonts are displayed incorrectly..... | 181 |
| Chapter 13. Uninstalling the Operations Center..... | 183 |
| Uninstalling the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard..... | 183 |
| Uninstalling the Operations Center in console mode..... | 183 |
| Uninstalling the Operations Center in silent mode..... | 183 |
| Chapter 14. Rolling back to a previous version of the Operations Center..... | 185 |
| Appendix A. Installation log files..... | 187 |
| Appendix B. Accessibility..... | 189 |
| Notices..... | 191 |
| Glossary..... | 195 |
| Index..... | 197 |

About this publication

This publication contains installation and configuration instructions for the IBM Spectrum Protect server, server languages, license, and device driver.

Instructions for installing the Operations Center are also included in this publication.

Who should read this guide

This publication is intended for system administrators who install, configure, or upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect server or Operations Center.

Installable components

The IBM Spectrum Protect server and licenses are required components.

These components are in several different installation packages.

| Table 1. IBM Spectrum Protect installable components | | |
|--|--|--|
| IBM Spectrum Protect component | Description | Additional information |
| Server (required) | Includes the database, the Global Security Kit (GSKit), IBM® Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE), and tools to help you configure and manage the server. | “Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using the installation wizard” on page 72 |
| Language package (optional) | Each language package (one for each language) contains language-specific information for the server. | See “Installing server language packages” on page 74 . |
| Licenses (required) | Includes support for all licensed features. After you install this package, you must register the licenses you purchased. | Use the REGISTER LICENSE command. |
| Devices (optional) | Extends media management capability. | A list of devices that are supported by this driver is available from the IBM Support Portal . |

| <i>Table 1. IBM Spectrum Protect installable components (continued)</i> | | |
|---|---|--|
| IBM Spectrum Protect component | Description | Additional information |
| Storage agent (optional) | <p>Installs the component that allows client systems to write data directly to, or read data directly from, storage devices that are attached to a storage area network (SAN).</p> <p>Remember: IBM Spectrum Protect for Storage Area Networks is a separately licensed product.</p> | For more information about storage agents, see Tivoli Storage Manager for Storage Area Networks (V7.1.1) . |
| Operations Center (optional) | Installs the Operations Center, which is a web-based interface for managing your storage environment. | See Part 2, “Installing and upgrading the Operations Center,” on page 117. |

Publications

The IBM Spectrum Protect product family includes IBM Spectrum Protect Plus, IBM Spectrum Protect for Virtual Environments, IBM Spectrum Protect for Databases, and several other storage management products from IBM.

To view IBM product documentation, see [IBM Knowledge Center](#).

What's new in this release

This release of IBM Spectrum Protect introduces new features and updates.

For a list of new features and updates, see [What's new](#).

If changes were made in the documentation, they are indicated by a vertical bar (|) in the margin.

Part 1. Installing and upgrading the server

Install and upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

Chapter 1. Planning to install the server

Install the server software on the computer that manages storage devices and install the client software on every workstation that transfers data to IBM Spectrum Protect server-managed storage.

What you should know first

Before installing IBM Spectrum Protect, be familiar with your operating systems, storage devices, communication protocols, and system configurations.

Server maintenance releases, client software, and publications are available from the [IBM Support Portal](#).

Restriction: You can install and run the IBM Spectrum Protect server on a system that already has IBM Db2® installed on it, whether Db2 was installed independently or as part of some other application, with some restrictions.

For details, see “Compatibility of the IBM Spectrum Protect server with other IBM Db2 products on the system” on page 49.

Experienced Db2 administrators can choose to perform advanced SQL queries and use Db2 tools to monitor the database. Do not, however, use Db2 tools to change Db2 configuration settings from those that are preset by IBM Spectrum Protect, or alter the Db2 environment for IBM Spectrum Protect in other ways, such as with other products. The server has been built and tested extensively using the data definition language (DDL) and database configuration that the server deploys.



Attention: Do not alter the Db2 software that is installed with IBM Spectrum Protect installation packages and fix packs. Do not install or upgrade to a different version, release, or fix pack of Db2 software because doing so can damage the database.

What you should know about security before you install or upgrade the server

Review information about the enhanced security features in the IBM Spectrum Protect server and the requirements for updating your environment.

Before you begin

Beginning in Version 8.1.2, enhancements were added to IBM Spectrum Protect that enforce stricter security settings. Before you install or upgrade IBM Spectrum Protect, complete the following steps:

- In IBM Knowledge Center, in the *What's New* topic, review the information in the Security sections to learn about security updates for each version.
- If you have previous versions of the server in your environment, review the restrictions and known issues in [technote 2004844](#). To avoid these restrictions and take advantage of the latest security enhancements, plan to update all IBM Spectrum Protect servers and backup-archive clients in your environment to the latest version.

Security enhancements

The following security enhancements were added beginning in V8.1.2:

Security protocol that uses Transport Layer Security (TLS)

IBM Spectrum Protect V8.1.2 and later software has an improved security protocol that uses TLS 1.2 for authentication between the server, storage agent, and backup-archive clients.

Automatic Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) configuration and distribution of certificates

Servers, storage agents, and clients using V8.1.2 or later software are automatically configured to authenticate with each other by using TLS.

Using the new protocol, each server, storage agent, and client has a unique self-signed certificate that is used to authenticate and allow TLS connections. IBM Spectrum Protect self-signed certificates enable secure authentication between entities, enable strong encryption for data transmission, and automatically distribute public keys to client nodes. Certificates are automatically exchanged between all clients, storage agents, and servers that use V8.1.2 or later software. You do not have to manually configure TLS or manually install the certificates for every client. The new TLS enhancements do not require options changes, and certificates are transferred to clients automatically upon first connection unless you are using a single administrator ID to access multiple systems.

By default, self-signed certificates are distributed, but you can optionally use other configurations such as certificates that are signed by a certificate authority. For more information about using certificates, see *SSL and TLS communication* in IBM Knowledge Center.

Combination of TCP/IP and TLS protocols for secure communication and minimal impact to performance

In previous versions of IBM Spectrum Protect software, you had to choose either TLS or TCP/IP to encrypt all communication. The new security protocol uses a combination of TCP/IP and TLS to secure communication between servers, clients, and storage agents. By default, TLS is used only to encrypt authentication and metadata, while TCP/IP is used for data transmission. Since TLS encryption is primarily used for authentication only, performance for backup and restore operations is not affected.

Optionally, you can use TLS to encrypt data transmission by using the **SSL** client option for client-to-server communication, and the **SSL** parameter in the **UPDATE SERVER** command for server-to-server communication.

Backward compatibility makes it easier to plan upgrades in batches

Upgraded versions of IBM Spectrum Protect servers and clients can continue to connect to older versions when the **SESSIONSECURITY** parameter is set to **TRANSITIONAL**.

You are not required to update backup-archive clients to V8.1.2 or later before you upgrade servers. After you upgrade a server to V8.1.2 or later, nodes and administrators that are using earlier versions of the software will continue to communicate with the server by using the **TRANSITIONAL** value until the entity meets the requirements for the **STRICT** value. Similarly, you can upgrade backup-archive clients to V8.1.2 or later before you upgrade your IBM Spectrum Protect servers, but you are not required to upgrade servers first. Communication between servers and clients that are using different versions is not interrupted. However, you will not have the benefits of the security enhancements until both clients and servers are upgraded.

Enforce strict security with the SESSIONSECURITY parameter

To use the new security protocol, the server, client node, or administrator entities must be using IBM Spectrum Protect software that supports the **SESSIONSECURITY** parameter. Session security is the level of security that is used for communication among IBM Spectrum Protect client nodes, administrative clients, and servers. You can specify the following values for this parameter:

STRICT

Enforces the highest level of security for communication between IBM Spectrum Protect servers, nodes, and administrators, which is currently TLS 1.2.

TRANSITIONAL

Specifies that the existing communication protocol (for example, TCP/IP) is used until you update your IBM Spectrum Protect software to V8.1.2 or later. This is the default. When **SESSIONSECURITY=TRANSITIONAL**, stricter security settings are automatically enforced as higher versions of the TLS protocol are used and as the software is updated to V8.1.2 or later. After a node, administrator, or server meets the requirements for the **STRICT** value, session security is automatically updated to the **STRICT** value, and the entity can no longer authenticate by using a previous version of the client or earlier TLS protocols.

If **SESSIONSECURITY=TRANSITIONAL** and the server, node, or administrator has never met the requirements for the **STRICT** value, the server, node, or administrator will continue to authenticate by using the **TRANSITIONAL** value. However, after the server, node, or administrator meets the requirements for the **STRICT** value, the **SESSIONSECURITY** parameter value automatically updates

from TRANSITIONAL to STRICT. Then, the server, node, or administrator can no longer authenticate by using a version of the client or an SSL/TLS protocol that does not meet the requirements for STRICT.

Restriction: After an administrator successfully authenticates with a server by using IBM Spectrum Protect V8.1.2 or later software or Tivoli® Storage Manager V7.1.8 or later software, the administrator can no longer authenticate with the same server by using client or server versions earlier than V8.1.2 or V7.1.8. This restriction also applies to the destination server when you use functions such as command routing, server-to-server export that authenticates with the destination IBM Spectrum Protect server as an administrator from another server, administrator connections using the Operations Center, and connections from the administrative command-line client.

For client and administrative sessions, administrative command routing sessions might fail unless the administrator ID has already acquired certificates for all servers to which the administrator ID will connect. Administrators that authenticate by using the **dsmadmc** command, **dsmc** command, or dsm program cannot authenticate by using an earlier version after authenticating by using V8.1.2 or later. To resolve authentication issues for administrators, see the following tips:

- Ensure that all IBM Spectrum Protect software that the administrator account uses to log on is upgraded to V8.1.2 or later. If an administrator account logs on from multiple systems, ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system.
- If necessary, create a separate administrator account to use only with clients and servers that are using V8.1.1 or earlier software.

Before you upgrade

Before you upgrade a server, review the guidelines in the following checklist.

| Table 2. Planning checklist | |
|--|--|
| Guideline | Description |
| Back up the following server files: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key databases (cert.kdb and dsmkeydb.kdb) • Stash files (cert.sth and dsmkeydb.sth) | <p>Beginning with IBM Spectrum Protect Version 8.1.2, a master encryption key is automatically generated when you start the server if the master encryption key did not previously exist.</p> <p>The master encryption key is stored in a key database, dsmkeydb.kdb. Server certificates are still stored in the cert.kdb key database and accessed by the stash file cert.sth. You must protect both the key databases (cert.kdb and dsmkeydb.kdb) and the stash files (cert.sth and dsmkeydb.sth) that provide access to each of the key databases. By default, the BACKUP DB command protects the master encryption key in the same manner in which the volume history and devconfig files are protected. You must remember the database backup password to restore the database. The IBM Spectrum Protect server dsmserve.pwd file, which was used to store the master encryption key in previous releases, is no longer used.</p> |

| Table 2. Planning checklist (continued) | |
|---|--|
| Guideline | Description |
| Carefully plan upgrades for administrator IDs | <p>Identify all systems that administrator accounts use to log in for administration purposes.</p> <p>After a successful authentication to V8.1.2 or later software, administrators cannot authenticate to earlier versions of IBM Spectrum Protect software on the same server. If a single administrator ID is used to log in to multiple systems, plan to upgrade all of those systems with V8.1.2 or later software to ensure that the certificate is installed on all systems that the administrator logs in to.</p> <p>Tip: You will not get locked out of a server if the SESSIONSECURITY parameter for all of your administrator IDs is updated to the STRICT value. You can manually import the server's public certificate to a client from which you issue the dsmadmcc command.</p> |
| If you're using TLS with previous versions of the client that use the "TSM Server SelfSigned Key" (cert.arm) certificate, update your clients to V8.1.4 or later. | <p>In releases prior to V7.1.8, the default certificate was labeled "TSM Server SelfSigned Key" and had an MD5 signature, which does not support the TLS 1.2 protocol that is required by default for V8.1.2 or later clients and the Operations Center. To resolve this issue, complete one of the following steps:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade the server to V8.1.4 or later. Beginning with V8.1.4, servers that use the MD5-signed certificate as the default are automatically updated to use a default certificate with a SHA signature that is labeled "TSM Server SelfSigned SHA Key". A copy of the new default certificate is stored in the cert256.arm file, which is located in the server instance directory. <p>Tip: Before you update the server to use the new default certificate with a SHA signature, distribute the cert256.arm file to clients to prevent client backup failures. Each client must obtain and import the new certificate before they can connect to a server that is using the new default SHA certificate. You do not need to remove previous certificates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To manually update your default certificate, follow the instructions in technote 2004844. |

What to do next

- Follow the procedure in [“Applying security updates” on page 7](#) to install or upgrade an IBM Spectrum Protect server.
- For information about troubleshooting communication issues related to security updates, see [“Troubleshooting security updates” on page 12](#).
- For FAQ information, see [FAQ - Security updates in IBM Spectrum Protect](#).

- For information about using the IBM Spectrum Protect backup-archive web client in the new security environment, see [technote 2013830](#).

Applying security updates

Apply security updates that are delivered with new releases of IBM Spectrum Protect.

Before you begin

Review the following information:

- For details about security updates delivered with a release, see the *What's New* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.
- For information about the updates and any restrictions that can apply, see [“What you should know about security before you install or upgrade the server”](#) on page 3.
- To determine the order in which you upgrade the servers and clients in your environment, answer the following questions:

| <i>Table 3. Questions for consideration before upgrading</i> | |
|--|---|
| Question | Consideration |
| What is the role of the server in the configuration? | In general, you can upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect servers in your environment first and then upgrade backup-archive clients. However, in certain circumstances, for example, if you use command routing functions, the server can act as the client in your configuration. In that instance, to prevent communication issues, the suggested approach is to upgrade clients first. For information about different scenarios, see Upgrade scenarios . |

| <i>Table 3. Questions for consideration before upgrading (continued)</i> | |
|--|---|
| Question | Consideration |
| What systems are used for administrator authentication? | <p>For administrator accounts, the sequence in which you upgrade is important to prevent authentication issues.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Clients on multiple systems that log on by using the same ID (either node or administrative ID) must be upgraded at the same time. Server certificates are transferred to clients automatically upon first connection. – Before you upgrade your server, consider all endpoints that the administrator uses to connect to for administration purposes. If a single administrative ID is used to access multiple systems, ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system. – After an administrator ID authenticates successfully with the server by using IBM Spectrum Protect V8.1.2 or later software or Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1.8 or later software, the administrator can no longer authenticate with that server by using client or server versions earlier than V8.1.2 or V7.1.8. This is also true for a destination server when you authenticate with that destination IBM Spectrum Protect server as an administrator from another server. For example, this is true when you use the following functions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Command routing - Server-to-server export - Connecting from an administrative client in the Operations Center |

Table 3. Questions for consideration before upgrading (continued)

| Question | Consideration |
|---|--|
| In what sequence should I upgrade my systems? | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If you upgrade servers before you upgrade client nodes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Upgrade the hub server first and then any spoke servers. - When you upgrade a server to V8.1.2 or later, nodes and administrators that use earlier versions of the software can continue to communicate with the new server by using the existing communication protocol. The SESSIONSECURITY is set to TRANSITIONAL and if the server, node, or administrator has never met the requirements for the STRICT value, the server, node, or administrator continues to authenticate by using the TRANSITIONAL value. However, as soon as the server, node, or administrator meets the requirements for the STRICT value, the SESSIONSECURITY parameter value automatically updates from TRANSITIONAL to STRICT. – If you upgrade client nodes before you upgrade servers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Upgrade administrative clients first, and then upgrade non-administrative clients. Clients at later release levels continue to communicate with servers at earlier levels. Important: If you upgrade any one of the administrative clients in your environment, all other clients that use the same ID as the upgraded client must be upgraded at the same time. - It is not necessary to upgrade all of your non-administrative clients at the same time, unless multiple clients are using the same ID to log on. Then, all other clients that use the same ID as the upgraded client must be upgraded at the same time and the server's certificate must be installed on each system. |

About this task

If your environment includes IBM Spectrum Protect backup-archive clients or IBM Spectrum Protect servers that are earlier than V7.1.8 or V8.1.2, you might have to customize your configuration to ensure that communication between servers and clients is not interrupted. Follow the default procedure in this topic for installing or upgrading your environment.

Review [Upgrade scenarios](#) for other example scenarios that might apply to your environment.

Tip: To take advantage of the latest security enhancements, plan to update all IBM Spectrum Protect servers and backup-archive clients in your environment to the latest release level.

Procedure

1. Install or upgrade IBM Spectrum Protect servers in your environment. For more information, see the *Installing and upgrading the server* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.
 - a) Upgrade the Operations Center and the hub server. For more information, see [Part 2, “Installing and upgrading the Operations Center,”](#) on page 117.
 - b) Upgrade spoke servers.
 - c) Configure or verify server-to-server communications. For more information, see the following topics:
 - The *UPDATE SERVER* command in IBM Knowledge Center.
 - The *Configuring SSL communications between the hub server and a spoke server* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.
 - The *Configuring the server to connect to another server by using SSL* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.

Tip:

- Beginning in IBM Spectrum Protect V8.1.2 and Tivoli Storage Manager V7.1.8, the **SSL** parameter uses SSL to encrypt communication with the specified server even if the **SSL** parameter is set to NO.
 - Beginning with V8.1.4, certificates are automatically configured between storage agents, library clients, and library manager servers. Certificates are exchanged the first time a server-to-server connection is established to a server with enhanced security.
2. Install or upgrade administrative clients. For more information, see the *Installing and configuring clients* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.
 3. Enable secure communications between all systems that administrators use to log in for administration purposes.
 - Ensure that the IBM Spectrum Protect software that the administrator account uses to log on is upgraded to V8.1.2 or later.
 - If an administrative ID logs on from multiple systems, ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system.
 4. Install or upgrade non-administrative clients. For more information, see the *Installing and configuring clients* topic in IBM Knowledge Center.

Remember: You can upgrade your non-administrative clients in phases. You can continue to connect to servers at later release levels from clients at earlier release levels by issuing the **UPDATE NODE** command and setting the **SESSIONSECURITY** parameter to TRANSITIONAL for each node.

```
update node nodename sessionsecurity=transitional
```

What to do next

Other upgrade scenarios might apply to your environment. Review example upgrade scenarios in the following table.

Table 4. Upgrade scenarios

| Scenario | Considerations | Suggested upgrade approach |
|--|--|--|
| I use administrative command routing functions to route commands to one or more servers. I want to connect to an IBM Spectrum Protect server that is earlier than V8.1.2. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With command routing, the server can act as the administrative client. • Command routing uses the ID and the password of the administrator who is issuing the command. • If you use a single administrative ID to access multiple systems, ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upgrade the administrative client first. Important: Clients on multiple systems that log on by using the same node or administrative ID must be upgraded at the same time. • On each server to which commands are being routed, verify that the following information is configured: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The same administrator ID and password – The required administrative authority on each server – The required certificates are installed • Upgrade the servers that the administrator account uses to log on to V8.1.2 or later. |
| My administrative client is at the latest release version, and I use the same administrator ID to authenticate to different systems by using the dsmadmc command. I have authenticated successfully to an IBM Spectrum Protect server in my environment that is running at the latest version. I now want to authenticate to a server at a version earlier than V8.1.2. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After an administrator authenticates to an IBM Spectrum Protect server V8.1.2 or later by using a version of the client at V8.1.2 or later, the administrative ID can only authenticate with that server on clients or servers that are using V8.1.2 or later. • If you use a single administrative ID to access multiple systems, plan to upgrade all of those systems with V8.1.2 or later software to ensure that the server's certificate is installed on all systems to which the administrator logs on. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that all IBM Spectrum Protect software that the administrators use to log on is upgraded to V8.1.2 or later. The preferred action is to upgrade all the servers in your environment to the latest version. • If necessary, create a separate administrator account to use only with clients and servers that are using V8.1.1 or earlier software. |

Table 4. Upgrade scenarios (continued)

| Scenario | Considerations | Suggested upgrade approach |
|--|---|---|
| The IBM Spectrum Protect server is already upgraded to the latest release level. I have an administrative client at release level V8.1.0 and I want to connect to the server from the Operations Center. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you upgrade any one of the administrative clients in your environment, all other clients that use the same ID as the upgraded client must be upgraded at the same time. • To use an administrator ID in a multiple-server configuration, the ID must be registered on the hub and spoke servers with the same password, authority level, and required certificates. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On each server, verify that the following information is set up: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The same administrator ID and password – The required administrative authority on each server – The required certificates • Upgrade non-administrative clients in a phased manner. |
| I use node replication to protect my data. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The replication heartbeat initiates a certificate exchange when the first server-to-server connection is established after you upgrade the server. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Upgrade your servers before you upgrade your clients; follow the default procedure. |
| I want to upgrade my backup-archive clients before I upgrade my servers. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After you upgrade a server to V8.1.2 or later, nodes and administrators that are using earlier versions of the software will continue to communicate with the server by using the TRANSITIONAL value until the entity meets the requirements for the STRICT value. • Communication between servers and clients will not be interrupted. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you upgrade your clients before you upgrade your servers, upgrade administrative clients first, and then upgrade non-administrative clients. Clients at later release levels continue to communicate with servers at earlier levels. |

Troubleshooting security updates

Troubleshoot issues that might occur after you upgrade IBM Spectrum Protect.

| Symptom | Resolution |
|--|---|
| An administrator account cannot log in to a system that is using software earlier than V8.1.2. | <p>After an administrator successfully authenticates with the server by using IBM Spectrum Protect V8.1.2 or later software, the administrator can no longer authenticate with that server that uses client or server versions earlier than V8.1.2. This restriction also applies to the destination server when you use functions such as command routing, server-to-server export that authenticates with the destination IBM Spectrum Protect server as an administrator from another server, administrator connections that use the Operations Center, and connections from the administrative command-line client.</p> <p>To resolve authentication issues for administrators, complete the following steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Identify all systems from which administrators log in and which use the administrative ID to log in. Upgrade the system software to IBM Spectrum |

| Symptom | Resolution |
|--|---|
| | <p>Protect V8.1.2 or later, and ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Set the administrator's SESSIONSECURITY parameter value to TRANSITIONAL by issuing the command <code>update admin admin_name sessionsecurity=transitional</code> Retry the administrator connection. <p>Tip: If necessary, create a separate administrator account to use only with clients and servers that are using V8.1.1 or earlier software.</p> |
| <p>Certificate distribution failed for a node, administrator, or server.</p> | <p>A node, administrator, or server that is using V8.1.2 or later software has a SESSIONSECURITY value of STRICT, but you have to reset the value to TRANSITIONAL to retry certificate distribution.</p> <p>When using the new protocol, the automatic transfer of a server's public certificate is performed only on the first connection to a server with enhanced security. After the first connection, the SESSIONSECURITY parameter value of a node changes from TRANSITIONAL to STRICT. You can temporarily update a node, administrator, or server to TRANSITIONAL to allow another automatic transfer of the certificate. While in TRANSITIONAL, the next connection automatically transfers the certificate if needed and resets the SESSIONSECURITY parameter to STRICT.</p> <p>Update the value of the SESSIONSECURITY parameter to TRANSITIONAL by issuing one of the following commands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For client nodes, issue: <code>update node node_name sessionsecurity=transitional</code> For administrators, issue: <code>update admin admin_name sessionsecurity=transitional</code> For servers, issue: <code>update server server_name sessionsecurity=transitional</code> <p>Alternatively, you can manually transfer and import the public certificate by using the <code>dsmcert</code> utility to issue the following commands:</p> <pre>openssl s_client -connect tapsrv04:1500 -showcerts > tapsrv04.arm</pre> <pre>dsmcert -add -server tapsrv04 -file tapsrv04.arm</pre> <p>If you are using CA-signed certificates, you must install the CA-root and any CA-intermediate certificates on each key database for the client, server, and storage agent that initiates SSL communication.</p> |
| <p>Certificate exchange between IBM Spectrum Protect servers was not successful.</p> | <p>When using the new protocol, the automatic transfer of a server's public certificate is performed only on the first connection to a server with enhanced security. After the first connection, the SESSIONSECURITY parameter value of a server changes from TRANSITIONAL to STRICT. Retry certificate exchange between two IBM Spectrum Protect servers. For information, see <i>Retrying certificate exchange between servers</i>.</p> |
| <p>Certificate exchange between an IBM Spectrum Protect server and a client</p> | <p>When using the new protocol, the automatic transfer of a server's public certificate is performed only on the first connection to a server with enhanced security. After the first connection, the SESSIONSECURITY parameter value of a node changes from TRANSITIONAL to STRICT. To retry certificate exchange</p> |

| Symptom | Resolution |
|---|---|
| node was not successful. | <p>between clients and servers at versions earlier than V8.1.2, complete these steps:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For existing clients that are configured to use SSL with the cert.arm certificate, reconfigure them to use the cert256.arm certificate. For instructions, see <i>Configuring storage agents, servers, clients, and the Operations Center to connect to the server by using SSL</i> in IBM Knowledge Center. 2. Update the default certificate by issuing the following command from the server instance directory: <pre>gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -setdefault -db cert.kdb -stashed -label "TSM Server SelfSigned SHA Key"</pre> 3. Restart the server. <p>For clients and servers at V8.1.2 and later, the certificates are automatically distributed. If communication between clients or servers fails, complete these steps to retry certificate acquisition:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For nodes and administrators, set the SESSIONSECURITY parameter to TRANSITIONAL by issuing the following commands for each node or administrator that you want to retry: <pre>update node nodename sessionsecurity=transitional update admin adminname sessionsecurity=transitional</pre> <p>Tip: Administrators that authenticate by using the dsmdmc command, dsmc command, or dsm program cannot authenticate by using an earlier version after authenticating by using V8.1.2 or later. To resolve authentication issues for administrators, see the following tips:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that all IBM Spectrum Protect software that the administrator account uses to log in is upgraded to V8.1.2 or later. If an administrator account logs on from multiple systems, ensure that the server's certificate is installed on each system before the administrator account is used for command routing. • After an administrator authenticates to a V8.1.2 or later server by using a V8.1.2 or later client, the administrator can authenticate only on clients or servers that are using V8.1.2 or later. An administrator command can be issued from any system. If necessary, create a separate administrator account to use only with clients and servers that are using V8.1.1 or earlier software. 2. For storage agents, update the STASESSIONSECURITY option in the storage agent options file dsmsta.opt by changing the STRICT value to TRANSITIONAL. 3. Restart the servers. Certificate changes do not take effect until you restart the servers or storage agents. 4. If you are still unable to exchange certificates after completing Steps 1-4, manually add the certificates to the servers and storage agents and restart them. For instructions, see <i>Configuring storage agents, servers, clients, and the Operations Center to connect to the server by using SSL</i> in IBM Knowledge Center. |
| You want to manually distribute certificates to client systems. | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect server administrator can automatically deploy a backup-archive client to update workstations where the backup-archive client is already installed. For information, see <i>Automatic backup-archive client deployment</i> in IBM Knowledge Center.</p> |

| Symptom | Resolution |
|--|--|
| | To manually add certificates to clients, see <i>Configuring IBM Spectrum Protect client/server communication with Secure Sockets Layer</i> in IBM Knowledge Center. |
| You want to reset certificates for client-to-client sessions. | The dsmdcert utility that is installed with the IBM Spectrum Protect backup-archive client is used to create a certificate store for server certificates. Use the dsmdcert utility to delete the files and re-import the certificates. |
| As a root user, you want to allow non-root users to manage your files. | <p>The trusted communications agent (TCA), previously used by non-root users in V8.1.0 and V7.1.6 and earlier IBM Spectrum Protect clients, is no longer available. Root users can use the following methods to allow non-root users to manage their files:</p> <p>Help desk method With the help desk method, the root user runs all backup and restore operations. The non-root user must contact the root user to request certain files to be backed up or restored.</p> <p>Authorized user method With the authorized user method, a non-root user is given read/write access to the password store by using the passworddir option to point to a password location that is readable and writable by the non-root user. This method allows non-root users to back up and restore their own files, use encryption, and manage their passwords with the passwordaccess generate option.</p> <p>For more information, see <i>Enable non-root users to manage their own data</i> in IBM Knowledge Center.</p> <p>If neither of these methods are satisfactory, you must use the earlier clients that included the TCA.</p> |
| You want to resolve GSKit compatibility issues. | <p>When multiple applications that use GSKit are installed on the same system, incompatibility issues might occur. To resolve these issues, see the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For IBM Spectrum Protect clients, see Technote 2011742. • For Db2, see Technote 7050721. • For IBM Spectrum Protect server, see Technote 2007298. • For IBM Spectrum Protect server and client on the same Windows system, see Technote 7050721. |

For more information about troubleshooting security updates, see [technote 2004844](#).

Retrying certificate exchange between servers

If the certificate exchange between servers fails, you can attempt another exchange.

Procedure

1. Remove the certificate from the partner server's database by issuing the following command on both servers:

```
update server servername forcesync=yes
```

Tip: The server might be using the wrong certificate if you are still getting error messages for each server-to-server session after you have completed the steps in this task and restarted the servers. If you determine that the server is attempting to use the wrong certificate, delete the certificate from the key database by issuing the following command:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -delete -db cert.kdb -stashed -label certificate_labelname
```

2. Delete the server definition by issuing the **DELETE SERVER** command for both the server and the partner server. If you cannot delete the server definition, you must configure the certificates manually. For instructions about manually configuring certificates, see *Configuring storage agents, servers, clients, and the Operations Center to connect to the server by using SSL* in IBM Knowledge Center.
3. To reacquire the certificate, cross-define the servers to each other and allow them to exchange certificates by issuing the following commands on both servers:

```
set crossdefine on
set serverhladdress hladdress
set serverlladdress lladdress
set serverpassword password
```

4. Issue the following command on one of the servers that you are cross defining:

```
define server servername crossdefine=yes ssl=yes
```

5. Repeat step 3 for all other Version 8.1.2 or later server pairs.
6. Restart the servers.
7. To verify that certificates were exchanged, issue the following command from the server instance directory of each server that you want to verify:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -list -db cert.kdb -stashed
```

Example output:

```
example.website.com:1542:0
```

Tip: If you use replication, the replication heartbeat runs approximately every 5 minutes and initiates a certificate exchange during the first connection after you upgrade the server. This connection causes messages ANR8583E and ANR8599W to appear in the log once, before a certificate exchange takes place. If you do not use replication, certificates are exchanged the first time a server-to-server session is initiated, except for server configurations without a server defined on both computers.

8. For servers that are defined as a virtual volume, complete the following steps:
 - a) Remove the partner certificate from the server's database by issuing the following command on both servers:

```
update server servername forcesync=yes
```

- b) Ensure that the same password is used for the server password value on the **DEFINE SERVER** command on the source server, the password value on the **REGISTER NODE** command on the virtual volume server, and the **SET SERVERPASSWORD** value on the virtual volume server. If necessary, update a password by using the **UPDATE SERVER**, **UPDATE NODE**, or **SET SERVERPASSWORD** commands, respectively. Certificates are exchanged after the first client backup operation from the virtual volume server to the source server.
9. If you are still unable to exchange certificates between servers, complete the following steps:
 - a) In the server definition for each of the communicating servers, verify that you specified a server name that matches the name that was set by issuing the **SET SERVERNAME** command on the partner server.
 - b) Verify that server definitions have passwords that are specified with the **SET SERVERPASSWORD** command. The passwords must match the value that is specified with the **SET SERVERNAME** command for the partner server.
 - c) After completing steps a and b, reissue the following command:

```
update server servername forcesync=yes
```

- d) Retry steps 1 through 3.

Planning for optimal performance

Before you install the IBM Spectrum Protect server, evaluate the characteristics and configuration of the system to ensure that the server is set up for optimal performance.

About this task

The optimal IBM Spectrum Protect environment is set up by using the [IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints](#).

Procedure

1. Review [“What you should know first”](#) on page 3.
2. Review each of the following subsections.

Planning for the server hardware and the operating system

Use the checklist to verify that the system where the server is installed meets requirements for hardware and software configuration.

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|--|---|
| <p>Does the operating system and hardware meet or exceed requirements?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Number and speed of processors • System memory • Supported operating system level | <p>If you are using the minimum required amount of memory, you can support a minimal workload.</p> <p>You can experiment by adding more system memory to determine whether the performance is improved. Then, decide whether you want to keep the system memory dedicated to the server. Test the memory variations by using the entire daily cycle of the server workload.</p> <p>If you run multiple servers on the system, add the requirements for each server to get the requirements for the system.</p> | <p>Review operating system requirements at technote 1243309.</p> <p>Additionally, review the guidance in Tuning tasks for operating systems and other applications.</p> <p>For more information about requirements when these features are in use, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Checklist for data deduplication • Checklist for node replication <p>For more information about sizing requirements for the server and storage, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprint.</p> |
| <p>Are disks configured for optimal performance?</p> | <p>The amount of tuning that can be done for different disk systems varies. Ensure that the appropriate queue depths and other disk system options are set.</p> | <p>For more information, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Planning for server database disks" • "Planning for server recovery log disks" • "Planning for storage pools in DISK or FILE device classes" |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|--|
| Does the server have enough memory? | <p>Heavier workloads and advanced features such as data deduplication and node replication require more than the minimum system memory that is specified in the system requirements document.</p> <p>For databases that are not enabled for data deduplication, use the following guidelines to specify memory requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For databases less than 500 GB, you need 16 GB of memory. • For databases with a size of 500 GB - 1 TB, you need 24 GB of memory. • For databases with a size of 1 TB - 1.5 TB, you need 32 GB of memory. • For databases greater than 1.5 TB, you need 40 GB of memory. <p>Ensure that you allocate extra space for the active log and the archive log for replication processing.</p> | <p>For more information about requirements when these features are in use, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Checklist for data deduplication • Checklist for node replication • Memory requirements |
| Does the system have enough host bus adapters (HBAs) to handle the data operations that the IBM Spectrum Protect server must run simultaneously? | <p>Understand what operations require use of HBAs at the same time.</p> <p>For example, a server must store 1 GB/sec of backup data while also doing storage pool migration that requires 0.5 GB/sec capacity to complete. The HBAs must be able to handle all of the data at the speed required.</p> | <p>See Tuning HBA capacity.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|---|
| Is network bandwidth greater than the planned maximum throughput for backups? | <p>Network bandwidth must allow the system to complete operations such as backups in the time that is allowed or that meets service level commitments.</p> <p>For node replication, network bandwidth must be greater than the planned maximum throughput.</p> | <p>For more information, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuning network performance • Checklist for node replication |
| Are you using a preferred file system for IBM Spectrum Protect server files? | <p>Use a file system that ensures optimal performance and data availability. The server uses direct I/O with file systems that support the feature. Using direct I/O can improve throughput and reduce processor use. For more information about the preferred file system for your operating system, see IBM Spectrum Protect server-supported file systems.</p> | <p>For more information, see Configuring the operating system for disk performance.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|--|
| Are you planning to configure enough paging space? | <p>Paging space, or swap space, extends the memory that is available for processing. When the amount of free RAM in the system is low, programs or data that is not in use are moved from memory to paging space. This action releases memory for other activities, such as database operations.</p> <p>Restriction: Do not use paging space to add memory to your system. Paging space is intended to provide only a limited and temporary extension of space. If your system uses paging space, system memory is full and must be extended.</p> <p>Use a minimum of 32 GB of paging space or 50% of your RAM, whichever value is larger.</p> | |
| Are you planning to tune the kernel parameters after installation of the server? | You must tune kernel parameters. | See the information about tuning kernel parameters: Linux®: Tuning kernel parameters for Linux systems |

Planning for the server database disks

Use the checklist to verify that the system where the server is installed meets requirements for hardware and software configuration.

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|--|
| Is the database on fast, low-latency disks? | <p>Do not use the following drives for the IBM Spectrum Protect database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nearline SAS (NL-SAS) • Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) • Parallel Advanced Technology Attachment (PATA) <p>Do not use internal disks that are included by default in most server hardware.</p> <p>Enterprise-grade solid-state disks (SSD), with Fibre Channel or SAS interface, offer the best performance.</p> <p>If you plan to use the data deduplication functions of IBM Spectrum Protect, focus on disk performance in terms of I/O operations per second (IOPS).</p> | For more information, see Checklist for data deduplication . |
| Is the database stored on disks or LUNs that are separate from disks or LUNs that are used for the active log, archive log, and storage pool volumes? | <p>Separation of the server database from other server components helps reduce contention for the same resources by different operations that must run at the same time.</p> <p>Tip: The database and the archive log can share an array when you use solid-state drive (SSD) technology.</p> | |
| If you are using RAID, do you know how to select the optimal RAID level for your system? Are you defining all LUNs with the same size and type of RAID? | <p>When a system must do large numbers of writes, RAID 10 outperforms RAID 5. However, RAID 10 requires more disks than RAID 5 for the same amount of usable storage.</p> <p>If your disk system is RAID, define all your LUNs with the same size and type of RAID. For example, do not mix 4+1 RAID 5 with 4+2 RAID 6.</p> | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|--|---|
| <p>If an option to set the strip size or segment size is available, are you planning to optimize the size when you configure the disk system?</p> | <p>If you can set the strip size or segment size, use 64 KB or 128 KB sizes on disk systems for the database.</p> | <p>The block size that is used for the database varies depending on the table space. Most table spaces use 8 KB blocks, but some use 32 KB blocks.</p> |
| <p>Are you planning to create at least four directories, also called storage paths, on four separate LUNs for the database?</p> <p>Create one directory per distinct array on the subsystem. If you have fewer than three arrays, create a separate LUN volume within the array.</p> | <p>Heavier workloads and use of some features require more database storage paths than the minimum requirements.</p> <p>Server operations such as data deduplication drive a high number of input/output operations per second (IOPS) for the database. Such operations perform better when the database has more directories.</p> <p>For server databases that are larger than 2 TB or are expected to grow to that size, use eight directories.</p> <p>Consider planned growth of the system when you determine how many storage paths to create. The server uses the higher number of storage paths more effectively if the storage paths are present when the server is first created.</p> <p>Use the <code>DB2_PARALLEL_IO</code> variable to force parallel I/O to occur on table spaces that have one container, or on table spaces that have containers on more than one physical disk. If you do not set the <code>DB2_PARALLEL_IO</code> variable, I/O parallelism is equal to the number of containers that are used by the table space. For example, if a table space spans four containers, the level of I/O parallelism that is used is 4.</p> | <p>For more information, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Checklist for data deduplication • Checklist for node replication <p>For help with forecasting growth when the server deduplicates data, see technote 1596944.</p> <p>For the most recent information about database size, database reorganization, and performance considerations for IBM Spectrum Protect servers, see technote 1683633.</p> <p>For information about setting the <code>DB2_PARALLEL_IO</code> variable, see Recommended settings for IBM Db2 registry variables.</p> |
| <p>Are all directories for the database the same size?</p> | <p>Directories that are all the same size ensure a consistent degree of parallelism for database operations. If one or more directories for the database are smaller than the others, they reduce the potential for optimized parallel prefetching.</p> <p>This guideline also applies if you must add storage paths after the initial configuration of the server.</p> | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|--|
| Are you planning to raise the queue depth of the database LUNs on AIX® systems? | The default queue depth is often too low. | See Configuring AIX systems for disk performance . |

Planning for the server recovery log disks

Use the checklist to verify that the system where the server is installed meets requirements for hardware and software configuration.

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|--|
| Are the active log and archive log stored on disks or LUNs that are separate from what is used for the database and storage pool volumes? | Ensure that the disks where you place the active log are not used for other server or system purposes. Do not place the active log on disks that contain the server database, the archive log, or system files such as page or swap space. | Separation of the server database, active log, and archive log helps to reduce contention for the same resources by different operations that must run at the same time. |
| Are the logs on disks that have nonvolatile write cache? | Nonvolatile write cache allows data to be written to the logs as fast as possible. Faster write operations for the logs can improve performance for server operations. | |
| Are you setting the logs to a size that adequately supports the workload? | <p>If you are not sure about the workload, use the largest size that you can.</p> <p>Active log The maximum size is 512 GB, set with the ACTIVELOGSIZE server option.</p> <p>Ensure that there is at least 8 GB of free space on the active log file system after the fixed size active logs are created.</p> <p>Archive log The size of the archive log is limited by the size of the file system on which it is located, and not by a server option. Make the archive log at least as large as the active log.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For log sizing details, see the recovery log information in technote 400357. For information about sizing when you use data deduplication, see Checklist for data deduplication. |
| Are you defining an archive failover log? Are you placing this log on a disk that is separate from the archive log? | The archive failover log is for emergency use by the server when the archive log becomes full. Slower disks can be used for the archive failover log. | <p>Use the ARCHFAILOVERLOGDIRECTORY server option to specify the location of the archive failover log.</p> <p>Monitor the usage of the directory for the archive failover log. If the archive failover log must be used by the server, the space for the archive log might not be large enough.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|--|
| If you are mirroring the active log, are you using only one type of mirroring? | <p>You can mirror the log by using one of the following methods. Use only one type of mirroring for the log.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the MIRRORLOGDIRECTORY option that is available for the IBM Spectrum Protect server to specify a mirror location. • Use software mirroring, such as Logical Volume Manager (LVM) on AIX. • Use mirroring in the disk system hardware. | <p>If you mirror the active log, ensure that the disks for both the active log and the mirror copy have equal speed and reliability.</p> <p>For more information, see Configuring and tuning the recovery log.</p> |

Planning for directory-container and cloud-container storage pools

Review how your directory-container and cloud-container storage pools are set up to ensure optimal performance.

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|--|---|
| Measured in terms of input/output operations per second (IOPS), are you using fast disk storage for the IBM Spectrum Protect database? | <p>Use a high-performance disk for the database. Use solid-state drive technology for data deduplication processing.</p> <p>Ensure that the database has a minimum capability of 3000 IOPS. For each TB of data that is backed up daily (before data deduplication), add 1000 IOPS to this minimum.</p> <p>For example, an IBM Spectrum Protect server that is ingesting 3 TB of data per day would need 6000 IOPS for the database disks:</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> $3000 \text{ IOPS minimum} + 3000 (3 \text{ TB} \times 1000 \text{ IOPS}) = 6000 \text{ IOPS}$ </div> | <p>For recommendations about disk selection, see "Planning for server database disks."</p> <p>For more information about IOPS, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|--|
| Do you have enough memory for the size of your database? | <p>Use a minimum of 40 GB of system memory for IBM Spectrum Protect servers, with a database size of 100 GB, that are deduplicating data. If the retained capacity of backup data grows, the memory requirement might need to be higher.</p> <p>Monitor memory usage regularly to determine whether more memory is required.</p> <p>Use more system memory to improve caching of database pages. The following memory size guidelines are based on the daily amount of new data that you back up:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 128 GB of system memory for daily backups of data, where the database size is 1 - 2 TB • 192 GB of system memory for daily backups of data, where the database size is 2 - 4 TB | Memory requirements |
| Have you properly sized the storage capacity for the database active log and archive log? | <p>Configure the server to have a minimum active log size of 128 GB by setting the ACTIVELOGSIZE server option to a value of 131072.</p> <p>The suggested starting size for the archive log is 1 TB. The size of the archive log is limited by the size of the file system on which it is located, and not by a server option. Ensure that there is at least 10% extra disk space for the file system than the size of the archive log.</p> <p>Use a directory for the database archive logs with an initial free capacity of at least 1 TB. Specify the directory by using the ARCHLOGDIRECTORY server option.</p> <p>Define space for the archive failover log by using the ARCHFAILOVERLOGDIRECTORY server option.</p> | For more information about sizing for your system, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints . |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|--|--|
| Is compression enabled for the archive log and database backups? | <p>Enable the ARCHLOGCOMPRESS server option to save storage space.</p> <p>This compression option is different from inline compression. Inline compression is enabled by default with IBM Spectrum Protect V7.1.5 and later.</p> <p>Restriction: Do not use this option if the amount of backed up data exceeds 6 TB per day.</p> | For more information about compression for your system, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints . |
| <p>Are the IBM Spectrum Protect database and logs on separate disk volumes (LUNs)?</p> <p>Is the disk that is used for the database configured according to best practices for a transactional database?</p> | The database must not share disk volumes with IBM Spectrum Protect database logs or storage pools, or with any other application or file system. | For more information about server database and recovery log configuration, see Server database and recovery log configuration and tuning . |
| Are you using a minimum of eight (2.2 GHz or equivalent) processor cores for each IBM Spectrum Protect server that you plan to use with data deduplication? | If you are planning to use client-side data deduplication, verify that client systems have adequate resources available during a backup operation to complete data deduplication processing. Use a processor that is at least the minimum equivalent of one 2.2 GHz processor core per backup process with client-side data deduplication. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Effective planning and use of deduplication • IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|--|---|
| Did you allocate enough storage space for the database? | <p>For a rough estimate, plan for 100 GB of database storage for every 25 TB of data that is to be protected in deduplicated storage pools.</p> <p><i>Protected data</i> is the amount of data before data deduplication, including all versions of objects stored.</p> <p>For database backup operations with a large number of small files, where the average size of the file is less than 512 KB, you need more database space. For smaller object sizes, plan on 100 GB of database space for every 10 TB stored.</p> <p>As a best practice, define a new container storage pool exclusively for data deduplication. Data deduplication occurs at the storage-pool level, and all data within a storage pool, except encrypted data, is deduplicated.</p> | The optimal IBM Spectrum Protect environment is set up by using the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints . |
| Have you estimated storage pool capacity to configure enough space for the size of your environment? | <p>You can estimate capacity requirements for a deduplicated storage pool by using the following technique:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Estimate the base size of the source data. 2. Estimate the daily backup size by using an estimated change and growth rate. 3. Determine retention requirements. 4. Estimate the total amount of source data by factoring in the base size, daily backup size, and retention requirements. 5. Apply the deduplication ratio factor. 6. Apply the compression ratio factor. 7. Round up the estimate to consider transient storage pool usage. | For an example of using this technique, see Effective planning and use of deduplication . |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|---|
| Have you distributed disk I/O over many disk devices and controllers? | <p>Use arrays that consist of as many disks as possible, which is sometimes referred to as wide striping. Ensure that you use one database directory per distinct array on the subsystem.</p> <p>Set the <i>DB2_PARALLEL_IO</i> registry variable to enable parallel I/O for each table space used if the containers in the table space span multiple physical disks.</p> <p>When I/O bandwidth is available and the files are large, for example 1 MB, the process of finding duplicates can occupy the resources of an entire processor. When files are smaller, other bottlenecks can occur.</p> <p>Specify eight or more file systems for the deduplicated storage pool device class so that I/O is distributed across as many LUNs and physical devices as possible.</p> | <p>For guidelines about setting up storage pools, see "Planning for storage pools in DISK or FILE device classes."</p> <p>For information about setting the <i>DB2_PARALLEL_IO</i> variable, see Recommended settings for IBM Db2 registry variables.</p> |
| Have you scheduled daily operations based on your backup strategy? | <p>The best practice sequence of operations is in the following order:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Client backup 2. Storage pool protection 3. Node replication 4. Database backup 5. Expire inventory | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Scheduling data deduplication and node replication processes • Daily operations for directory-container storage pools |
| Have you scheduled audit operations to identify corrupted files in storage pools? | <p>To schedule audit operations, use the DEFINE STGRULE command and specify the ACTIONTYPE=AUDIT parameter.</p> <p>As a best practice, to ensure that audit operations run continuously, do not specify the DELAY parameter.</p> | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|---|
| Do you have enough storage to manage the IBM Db2 lock list? | <p>If you deduplicate data that includes large files or large numbers of files concurrently, the process can result in insufficient storage space. When the lock list storage is insufficient, backup failures, data management process failures, or server outages can occur.</p> <p>File sizes greater than 500 GB that are processed by data deduplication are most likely to deplete storage space. However, if many backup operations use client-side data deduplication, this problem can also occur with smaller-sized files.</p> | For information about tuning the Db2 LOCKLIST parameter, see Tuning server-side data deduplication . |
| Is sufficient bandwidth available to transfer data to an IBM Spectrum Protect server? | <p>To transfer data to an IBM Spectrum Protect server, use client-side or server-side data deduplication and compression to reduce the bandwidth that is required.</p> <p>Use a V7.1.5 server or higher to use inline compression and use a V7.1.6 or later client to enable enhanced compression processing.</p> | For more information, see the enablededup client option. |
| Have you determined how many storage pool directories to assign to each storage pool? | <p>Assign directories to a storage pool by using the DEFINE STGPOOLDIRECTORY command.</p> <p>Create multiple storage pool directories and ensure that each directory is backed up to a separate disk volume (LUN).</p> | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|------------------|
| Did you allocate enough disk space in the cloud-container storage pool? | <p>To prevent backup failures, ensure that the local directory has enough space. Use the following list as a guide for optimal disk space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• For serial-attached SCSI (SAS) and spinning disk, calculate the amount of new data that is expected after daily data reduction (compression and data deduplication). Allocate up to 100 percent of that amount, in terabytes, for disk space.• Provide 3 TB for flash-based storage systems with fast network connections to on-premises, high-performance cloud systems.• Provide 5 TB for solid-state drive (SSD) systems with fast network connections to high-performance cloud systems. | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|------------------|
| Did you select the appropriate type of local storage? | <p>Ensure that data transfers from local storage to cloud finish before the next backup cycle starts.</p> <p>Tip: Data is removed from local storage soon after it moves to the cloud.</p> <p>Use the following guidelines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use flash or SSD for large systems that have high-performing cloud systems. Ensure that you have a dedicated 10 GB wide area network (WAN) link with a high-speed connection to the object storage. For example, use flash or SSD if you have a dedicated 10 GB WAN link plus a high-speed connection to either an IBM Cloud Object Storage location or to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) data center. • Use larger capacity 15000 rpm SAS disks for these scenarios: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Medium-sized systems – Slower cloud connections, for example, 1 GB – When you use IBM Cloud Object Storage as your service provider across several regions • For SAS or spinning disk, calculate the amount of new data that is expected after daily data reduction (compression and data deduplication). Allocate up to 100 percent of that amount for disk space, in terabytes. | |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|---|
| <p>For cloud-container storage pools, have you specified the total maximum number of parallel processes for the storage rule and each of its subrules?</p> | <p>To specify the maximum number of parallel processes, issue the DEFINE STGRULE command and specify the MAXPROCESS parameter. The default value is 8. For example, if the default value of 8 is specified, and the storage rule has four subrules, the storage rule can run eight parallel processes and each of its subrules can run eight parallel processes.</p> <p>For optimal throughput, use the following maximum number of parallel processes for small, medium, and large Blueprint systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small system: 10 processes • Medium system: 25 processes • Large system: 35-50 processes | |
| <p>For cloud-container storage pools, have you defined multiple Accesser® endpoints if you are using an on-premises IBM Cloud Object Storage system with IBM Spectrum Protect?</p> | <p>To optimize performance, define exclusive access for the following number of Accessers for small, medium, and large blueprint systems, depending on your data ingestion requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small system: 1 Accesser • Medium system: 2 Accessers • Large system: 3-4 Accessers | <p>For more information, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Cloud Blueprints.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|------------------|
| <p>For cloud-container storage pools, have you defined multiple Accesser endpoints if you are using an on-premises IBM Cloud Object Storage system with IBM Spectrum Protect?</p> | <p>Generally, the following Ethernet capability is required to connect to private IBM Cloud Object Storage endpoints for small, medium, and large Blueprint systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small system: 1 Gbit • Medium system: 5 Gbit • Large system: 10 Gbit <p>Tip: Depending on client data ingestion and simultaneous data transfer to object storage, you might require more than one 10 Gbit Ethernet network.</p> <p>When you configure the Ethernet connection, work with a network administrator and consider the following factors:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Ethernet capability of the server • The nature of the network between the server and the IBM Cloud Object Storage endpoint • The final ingestion point on object storage via a cloud-container storage pool | |

Planning for storage pools in DISK or FILE device classes

Use the checklist to review how your disk storage pools are set up. This checklist includes tips for storage pools that use DISK or FILE device classes.

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|---|
| Can the storage pool LUNs sustain throughput rates for 256 KB sequential reads and writes to adequately handle the workload within the time constraints? | <p>When you are planning for peak loads, consider all the data that you want the server to read or write to the disk storage pools simultaneously. For example, consider the peak flow of data from client backup operations and server data-movement operations such as migration that run at the same time.</p> <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect server reads and writes to storage pools predominantly in 256 KB blocks.</p> <p>If the disk system includes the capability, configure the disk system for optimal performance with sequential read/write operations rather than random read/write operations.</p> | <p>For more information, see Analyzing the basic performance of disk systems.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|--|---|--|
| Did you allocate enough storage space for the database? | <p>For a rough estimate, the following database size guidelines are based on the small, medium, and large blueprint systems to allow for database growth:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small system: At least 1 TB • Medium system: At least 2 TB • Large system: At least 4 TB <p>Tip: You might need more memory based on the amount of data that must be protected, the number of files that are stored, and whether you use data deduplication. With data deduplication, the load on the database becomes greater because there are frequent queries to the database to determine what deduplicated extents are on the server.</p> <p>For a rough estimate, plan for 100 GB of database storage for every 50 TB of data that is to be protected in deduplicated storage pools. Protected data is the amount of data before data deduplication, including all versions of objects stored.</p> <p>If you have several hundred TB of protected data, or if you are backing up multiple TBs of data daily, the starting size for the database must be at least 1 TB. Use the IBM Spectrum Protect to size the database for your system.</p> | <p>The optimal IBM Spectrum Protect environment is set up by using the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints.</p> <p>For information about the minimum amount of memory you must allocate on the server to complete operations, based on the database size, see Memory requirements.</p> |
| Is the disk configured to use read and write cache? | Use more cache for better performance. | |
| Do you need to backup the IBM Spectrum Protect database to cloud object storage? | <p>You can back up a database to, and restore a database from, cloud object storage for disaster recovery purposes.</p> <p>You can tune object storage endpoints, IBM Cloud Object Storage Accessers, network bandwidth, and data streams to ensure that database backup operations run efficiently.</p> | <p>Tuning database backups to cloud object storage.</p> |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|---|--|
| For storage pools that use FILE device classes, have you determined a good size to use for the storage pool volumes? | Review the information in Optimal number and size of volumes for storage pools that use disk . If you do not have the information to estimate a size for FILE device class volumes, start with volumes that are 50 GB. | Typically, problems arise more frequently when the volumes are too small. Few problems are reported when volumes are larger than needed. When you determine the volume size to use, as a precaution choose a size that might be larger than necessary. |
| For storage pools that use FILE device classes, are you using preallocated volumes? | Scratch volumes can cause file fragmentation. To ensure that a storage pool does not run out of volumes, set the MAXSCRATCH parameter to a value greater than zero. | Use the DEFINE VOLUME server command to preallocate volumes in the storage pool. Use the DEFINE STGPOOL or UPDATE STGPOOL server command to set the MAXSCRATCH parameter. |
| For storage pools that use FILE device classes, have you compared the maximum number of client sessions to the number of volumes that are defined? | Always maintain enough usable volumes in the storage pools to allow for the expected peak number of client sessions that run at one time. The volumes might be scratch volumes, empty volumes, or partly filled volumes. | For storage pools that use FILE device classes, only one session or process can write to a volume at the same time. |
| For storage pools that use FILE device classes, have you set the MOUNTLIMIT parameter of the device class to a value that is high enough to account for the number of volumes that might be mounted in parallel? | For storage pools that use data deduplication, the MOUNTLIMIT parameter is typically in the range of 500 - 1000. Set the value for MOUNTLIMIT to the maximum number of mount points that are needed for all active sessions. Consider parameters that affect the maximum number of mount points that are needed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The MAXSESSIONS server option, which is the maximum number of IBM Spectrum Protect sessions that can run concurrently. • The MAXNUMMP parameter, which sets the maximum number of mount points that each client node can use. For example, if the maximum number of client node backup sessions is typically 100 and each of the nodes has MAXNUMMP =2, multiply 100 nodes by the 2 mount points for each node to get the value of 200 for the MOUNTLIMIT parameter. | Use the REGISTER NODE or UPDATE NODE server command to set the MAXNUMMP parameter for client nodes. |

| Question | Tasks, characteristics, options, or settings | More information |
|---|--|--|
| For storage pools that use DISK device classes, have you determined how many storage pool volumes to put on each file system? | <p>How you configure the storage for a storage pool that uses a DISK device class depends on whether you are using RAID for the disk system.</p> <p>If you are not using RAID, then configure one file system per physical disk, and define one storage pool volume for each file system.</p> <p>If you are using RAID 5 with $n + 1$ volumes, configure the storage in one of the following ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configure n file systems on the LUN and define one storage pool volume per file system. • Configure one file system and n storage pool volumes for the LUN. | For an example layout that follows this guideline, see Sample layout of server storage pools . |
| Did you create your storage pools to distribute I/O across multiple file systems? | <p>Ensure that each file system is on a different LUN on the disk system.</p> <p>Typically, having 10 - 30 file systems is a good goal, but ensure that the file systems are no smaller than approximately 250 GB.</p> | <p>For details, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuning disk storage for the server • Tuning and configuring storage pools and volumes |
| Have you scheduled audit operations to identify corrupted files in storage pools? | <p>To schedule audit operations, use the DEFINE STGRULE command and specify the ACTIONTYPE=AUDIT parameter.</p> <p>To help optimize audit operations and ensure that they run continuously, do not specify the DELAY parameter.</p> | |

Planning for the correct type of storage technology

Storage devices have different capacity and performance characteristics. These characteristics affect which devices are better for use with IBM Spectrum Protect.

Procedure

- Review the following table to help you to choose the correct type of storage technology for the storage resources that the server requires.

Table 5. Storage technology types for IBM Spectrum Protect storage requirements

| Storage technology type | Database | Active log | Archive log and archive failover log | Storage pools |
|--|--|---|---|--|
| Solid-state disk (SSD) | Place the database on SSD in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – You are using IBM Spectrum Protect data deduplication. – You are backing up more than 8 TB of new data daily. | If you place the IBM Spectrum Protect database on an SSD, as a best practice, place the active log on an SSD. If space is not available, use high-performance disk instead. | Save SSDs for use with the database and active log. The archive log and archive failover logs can be placed on slower storage technology types. | Save SSDs for use with the database and active log. Storage pools can be placed on slower storage technology types. |
| High-performance disk with the following characteristics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – 15k rpm disk – Fibre Channel or serial-attached SCSI (SAS) interface | Use high-performance disks in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The server does not do data deduplication. – The server does not do node replication. Isolate the server database from its logs and storage pools, and from data for other applications. | Use high-performance disks in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The server does not do data deduplication. – The server does not do node replication. For performance and availability, isolate the active log from the server database, archive logs, and storage pools. | You can use high-performance disks for the archive log and archive failover logs. For availability, isolate these logs from the database and active log. | Use high-performance disks for storage pools in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Data is frequently read. – Data is frequently written. For performance and availability, isolate storage pool data from the server database and logs, and from data for other applications. |
| Medium-performance or high-performance disk with the following characteristics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – 10k rpm disk – Fibre Channel or SAS interface | If the disk system has a mix of disk technologies, use the faster disks for the database and active log. Isolate the server database from its logs and storage pools, and from data for other applications. | If the disk system has a mix of disk technologies, use the faster disks for the database and active log. For performance and availability, isolate the active log from the server database, archive logs, and storage pools. | You can use medium-performance or high-performance disk for the archive log and archive failover logs. For availability, isolate these logs from the database and active log. | Use medium-performance or high-performance disk for storage pools in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Data is frequently read. – Data is frequently written. For performance and availability, isolate storage pool data from the server database and logs, and from data for other applications. |

Table 5. Storage technology types for IBM Spectrum Protect storage requirements (continued)

| Storage technology type | Database | Active log | Archive log and archive failover log | Storage pools |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|--|--|
| SATA, network-attached storage | Do not use this storage for the database. Do not place the database on XIV storage systems. | Do not use this storage for the active log. | Use of this slower storage technology is acceptable because these logs are written once and infrequently read. | Use this slower storage technology in the following circumstances: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Data is infrequently written, for example written once. – Data is infrequently read. |
| Tape and virtual tape | | | | Use for long-term retention or if data is infrequently used. |

Applying best practices to the server installation

Typically, hardware configuration and selection have the most significant effect on the performance of an IBM Spectrum Protect solution. Other factors that affect performance are the operating system selection and configuration, and the configuration of IBM Spectrum Protect.

Procedure

- The following best practices are the most important for optimal performance and problem prevention.
- Review the table to determine the best practices that apply to your environment.

| Best practice | More information |
|--|--|
| Use fast disks for the server database. Enterprise-grade solid-state disks (SSD), with Fibre Channel or SAS interface, offer the best performance. | Use fast, low-latency disks for the database. Using SSD is essential if you are using data deduplication and node replication. Avoid Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) and Parallel Advanced Technology Attachment (PATA) disks. For details and more tips, see the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – "Planning for server database disks" – "Planning for the correct type of storage technology" |
| Ensure that the server system has enough memory. | Review operating system requirements in technote 1243309 . Heavier workloads require more than the minimum requirements. Advanced features such as data deduplication and node replication can require more than the minimum memory that is specified in the system requirements document. If you plan to run multiple instances, each instance requires the memory that is listed for one server. Multiply the memory for one server by the number of instances that are planned for the system. |

| Best practice | More information |
|---|--|
| Separate the server database, the active log, the archive log, and disk storage pools from each other. | <p>Keep all IBM Spectrum Protect storage resources on separate disks. Keep storage pool disks separate from the disks for the server database and logs. Storage pool operations can interfere with database operations when both are on the same disks. Ideally, the server database and logs are also separated from each other. For details and more tips, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – "Planning for server database disks" – "Planning for server recovery log disks" – "Planning for storage pools in DISK or FILE device classes" |
| Use at least four directories for the server database. For larger servers or servers that use advanced features, use eight directories. | <p>Place each directory on a LUN that is isolated from other LUNs and from other applications.</p> <p>A server is considered to be large if its database is larger than 2 TB or is expected to grow to that size. Use eight directories for such servers.</p> <p>See "Planning for server database disks."</p> |
| If you are using data deduplication, node replication, or both, follow the guidelines for database configuration and other items. | <p>Configure the server database according to the guidelines, because the database is extremely important to how well the server runs when these features are being used. For details and more tips, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Checklist for data deduplication – Checklist for node replication |
| For storage pools that use FILE type device classes, follow the guidelines for the size of storage pool volumes. Typically, 50 GB volumes are best. | <p>Review the information in Optimal number and size of volumes for storage pools that use disk to help you to determine volume size.</p> <p>Configure storage pool devices and file systems based on throughput requirements, not only on capacity requirements.</p> <p>Isolate the storage devices that are used by IBM Spectrum Protect from other applications that have high I/O, and ensure that there is enough throughput to that storage.</p> <p>For more details, see Checklist for storage pools on DISK or FILE.</p> |
| Schedule IBM Spectrum Protect client operations and server maintenance activities to avoid or minimize overlap of operations. | <p>For more details, see the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Tuning the schedule for daily operations – Checklist for server configuration |
| Monitor operations constantly. | <p>By monitoring, you can find problems early and more easily identify causes. Keep records of monitoring reports for up to a year to help you identify trends and plan for growth. See Monitoring and maintaining the environment for performance.</p> |

Minimum system requirements

To install the IBM Spectrum Protect server on a Linux system, it is necessary to have a minimum level of hardware and software, including a communication method and the most current device driver.

The optimal IBM Spectrum Protect environment is set up with data deduplication by using the [IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprints](#).

The IBM Spectrum Protect device driver package does not contain a device driver for this operating system because a SCSI generic device driver is used. Configure the device driver before using the IBM Spectrum Protect server with tape devices. The IBM Spectrum Protect driver package contains driver tools and ACSLS daemons. You can locate IBM driver packages at the [Fix Central website](#).

Requirements, supported devices, client installation packages, and fixes are available in the [IBM Support Portal for IBM Spectrum Protect](#). After you install IBM Spectrum Protect and before you customize it for your use, go to the website and download and apply any applicable fixes.

Minimum Linux x86_64 server requirements

Before you install an IBM Spectrum Protect server on a Linux x86_64 operating system, review the hardware and software requirements.

Hardware and software requirements for the IBM Spectrum Protect server installation

For the most current information about IBM Spectrum Protect system requirements, see [technote 1243309](#).

Table 1 describes the minimum hardware requirements that are needed for a server on a Linux x86_64 system.

| Table 6. Hardware requirements | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
| General | An AMD64 or Intel EM64T processor |
| Disk space | <p>The following minimum values for disk space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.3 GB for the installation directory • 2.5 GB for the /var directory • 4 GB for the /tmp directory • 128 MB in the home directory for the root user. • 2 GB for the shared resources area <p>In case a problem arises and any diagnosis is needed, it is optimal to have temporary or other space available on the system for a first failure data capture (FFDC) log or for other temporary uses such as for collecting trace logs.</p> <p>Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB to run replication. If replication and data deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB. Allocate at least three times the default active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.</p> <p>For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log needs its own container or LUN.</p> <p>Ensure that you see “Capacity planning” on page 52 for more details about disk space.</p> |

Table 6. Hardware requirements (continued)

| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
|------------------|--|
| Memory | <p>The following minimum values for memory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16 GB for standard server operations without data deduplication and node replication • 24 GB for data deduplication or node replication • 32 GB for node replication with data deduplication <p>For more specific memory requirements for larger databases and higher ingestion capability, see the IBM Spectrum Protect server memory tuning table.</p> <p>For more specific memory requirements when you are using data deduplication, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprint for your operating system.</p> |

Software requirements

[Table 2](#) describes the minimum software requirements that are needed for a server on a Linux x86_64 system.

Table 7. Software requirements

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------|--|
| Operating system | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect server on Linux x86_64 requires one of the following operating systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 or later • SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, SP3 or later • Ubuntu Server LTS, Version 16.04.2 |

Table 7. Software requirements (continued)

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------------|--|
| Libraries | <p>GNU C libraries, Version 2.3.3-98.38 or later, which are installed on the IBM Spectrum Protect system.</p> <p>For Red Hat Enterprise Linux Servers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • libaio • libstdc++.so.6 (32 and 64 bit packages are required) • numactl.x86_64 <p>For SUSE Linux Enterprise Servers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • libaio • libstdc++.so.6 at version 4.3 or later (32-bit and 64-bit packages are required) <p>For Ubuntu LTS Servers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • libaio1 <p>To determine if SELinux is installed and in enforcing mode, take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the <code>/etc/sysconfig/selinux</code> file. • Run the sestatus operating system command. • Check the <code>/var/log/messages</code> file for SELinux notices. <p>Restriction: SELinux must be disabled for IBM Spectrum Protect installations and upgrades.</p> <p>To disable SELinux, complete one of the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set permissive mode by issuing the <code>setenforce 0</code> command as a superuser. • Modify the <code>/etc/sysconfig/selinux</code> file and restart the machine. |
| Communication protocol | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6, which is standard with Linux • Shared memory protocol (with IBM Spectrum Protect Linux x86_64 client) |
| Processing | Asynchronous I/O must be enabled. On Linux kernels at 2.6 or later, install the libaio library to enable asynchronous I/O. |
| Device drivers | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect passthru device driver is used for non-IBM devices. It uses the SCSI passthru interface to communicate with tape devices and tape libraries. The Linux SCSI Generic (sg) device driver is required for tape drives and tape libraries. The IBM Spectrum Protect device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.</p> <p>For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at Fix Central.</p> <p>Configure the device drivers before you use the IBM Spectrum Protect server with tape devices.</p> <p>Tip: Tape storage is not supported on Ubuntu Server LTS.</p> |

Table 7. Software requirements (continued)

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------|--|
| Other software | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Korn Shell (ksh)• To authenticate IBM Spectrum Protect users with a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, you must use one of the following directory servers:<ul style="list-style-type: none">– Microsoft Active Directory (Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2016)– IBM Security Directory Server V6.3– IBM Security Directory Server V6.4 |

Minimum Linux on System z server requirements

Before you install an IBM Spectrum Protect server on a Linux on System z® operating system, review the hardware and software requirements.

Hardware and software requirements for the IBM Spectrum Protect server installation

For the most current information about IBM Spectrum Protect system requirements, see [technote 1243309](#).

Table 1 describes the minimum hardware requirements that are needed for your IBM Spectrum Protect Linux on System z system. For more details about planning disk space, see [“Capacity planning” on page 52](#).

Table 8. Hardware requirements

| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
|------------------|--|
| General | An IBM zSeries, IBM System z9, IBM System z10, or IBM zEnterprise System (z114 and z196) 64-bit native logical partition (LPAR) or z/VM guest. |

Table 8. Hardware requirements (continued)

| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
|------------------|---|
| Disk space | <p>The following minimum values for disk space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.3 GB for the installation directory • 2.5 GB for the /var directory • 4 GB for the /tmp directory • 128 MB in the home directory for the root user. • 2 GB for the shared resources area <p>In case a problem arises and any diagnosis is needed, it is optimal to have temporary or other space available on the system for a first failure data capture (FFDC) log or for other temporary uses such as for collecting trace logs.</p> <p>Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB to run replication. If replication and data deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB. Allocate at least three times the default active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.</p> <p>For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log needs its own container or LUN.</p> <p>Ensure that you see “Capacity planning” on page 52 for more details about disk space.</p> |
| Memory | <p>The following minimum values for memory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16 GB for standard server operations without data deduplication and node replication • 24 GB for data deduplication or node replication • 32 GB for node replication with data deduplication <p>For more specific memory requirements for larger databases and higher ingestion capability, see the IBM Spectrum Protect server memory tuning table.</p> <p>For more specific memory requirements when you are using data deduplication, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprint for your operating system.</p> |

Software requirements

Table 2 describes the minimum software requirements describes the minimum software requirements that are needed for your IBM Spectrum Protect Linux on System z system.

Table 9. Software requirements

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------|---|
| Operating system | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect server on Linux on System z (s390x 64-bit architecture) requires one of the following operating systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 or later • SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, SP2 or later |

Table 9. Software requirements (continued)

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------------|--|
| Libraries | <p>GNU C libraries, Version 2.3.3-98.38 or later, which are installed on the IBM Spectrum Protect system.</p> <p>For Red Hat Enterprise Linux Servers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • libaio • libstdc++.so.6 (32 and 64 bit packages are required) • numactl.x86_64 • libxlc-1.2.0.0.151119a.s390x or later <p>For SUSE Linux Enterprise Servers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • libaio • libstdc++.so.6 at version 4.3 or later (32-bit and 64-bit packages are required) • libxlc-1.2.0.0.151119a.s390x or later <p>To determine if SELinux is installed and in enforcing mode, take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the /etc/sysconfig/selinux file. • Run the sestatus operating system command. • Check the /var/log/messages file for SELinux notices. <p>Restriction: SELinux must be disabled for IBM Spectrum Protect installations and upgrades.</p> <p>To disable SELinux, complete one of the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set permissive mode by issuing the <code>setenforce 0</code> command as a superuser. • Modify the /etc/sysconfig/selinux file and restart the machine. |
| Communication protocol | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6, which is standard with Linux • Shared memory protocol (with IBM Spectrum Protect Linux s390x client) |
| Processing | Asynchronous I/O must be enabled. On Linux kernels at 2.6 or later, install the libaio library to enable asynchronous I/O. |
| Device drivers | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect passthru device driver is used for non-IBM devices. It uses the SCSI passthru interface to communicate with tape devices and tape libraries. The Linux SCSI Generic (sg) device driver is required for tape drives and tape libraries. The IBM Spectrum Protect device driver package contains device driver tools and ACSLS daemons.</p> <p>For the IBM 3590, 3592, or the Ultrium tape library or drives, the IBM device drivers are required. Install the most current device drivers. You can locate IBM driver packages at Fix Central.</p> <p>Configure the device drivers before you use the IBM Spectrum Protect server with tape devices.</p> |

Table 9. Software requirements (continued)

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------|---|
| Other software | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Korn Shell (ksh) • To authenticate IBM Spectrum Protect users with a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, you must use one of the following directory servers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Microsoft Active Directory (Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2016) – IBM Security Directory Server V6.3 – IBM Security Directory Server V6.4 |

Minimum Linux on Power Systems (little endian) server requirements

Before you install an IBM Spectrum Protect server on a Linux on Power Systems (little endian) operating system, review the hardware and software requirements.

Hardware and software requirements for the IBM Spectrum Protect server installation

For the most current information about IBM Spectrum Protect system requirements, see [technote 1243309](#).

Table 10 on page 47 describes the minimum hardware requirements that are needed for your system.

Table 10. Hardware requirements

| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
|------------------|--|
| General | A Linux on Power Systems (little endian) server on an IBM system, such as one listed on the Linux on IBM Power Systems website. |
| Disk space | <p>The following minimum disk space:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4.3 GB for the installation directory • 2.5 GB for the /var directory • 4 GB for the /tmp directory • 128 MB in the home directory for the root user. • 2 GB for the shared resources area <p>In case a problem arises and any diagnosis is needed, it is optimal to have temporary or other space available on the system for a first failure data capture (FFDC) log or for other temporary uses such as for collecting trace logs.</p> <p>Significant additional disk space is required for database and log files. The size of the database depends on the number of client files to be stored and the method by which the server manages them. The default active log space is 16 GB, the minimum that is needed for most workloads and configurations. When you create the active log, you need at least 64 GB to run replication. If replication and data deduplication are both being used, create an active log of 128 GB. Allocate at least three times the default active log space for the archive log (48 GB). Ensure that you have sufficient resources if you are using data deduplication or expect a heavy client workload.</p> <p>For optimal performance and to facilitate I/O, specify at least two equally sized containers or Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs) for the database. In addition, each active log and archive log needs its own container or LUN.</p> <p>Ensure that you see “Capacity planning” on page 52 for more details about disk space.</p> |

Table 10. Hardware requirements (continued)

| Type of hardware | Hardware requirements |
|------------------|--|
| Memory | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16 GB for standard server operations without data deduplication and node replication • 24 GB for data deduplication or node replication • 32 GB for node replication with data deduplication <p>For more specific memory requirements for larger databases and higher ingestion capability, see the IBM Spectrum Protect server memory tuning table.</p> <p>For more specific memory requirements when you are using data deduplication, see the IBM Spectrum Protect Blueprint for your operating system.</p> |

Software requirements

Table 11 on page 48 describes the minimum software requirements that are needed for your system.

Table 11. Software requirements

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------------|--|
| Operating system | <p>The IBM Spectrum Protect server on Linux on Power Systems (little endian) requires one of the following operating systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 7.5 (64-bit) • SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, SP3 or later <p>Restriction: The storage area network (SAN) discovery feature is not supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ubuntu Server LTS, Version 16.04.2 |
| Libraries | <p>GNU C libraries, Version 2.4-31.30 and later.</p> <p>libaio.so.1 (32-bit and 64-bit packages).</p> <p>To determine whether SELinux is installed and in enforcing mode, take one of the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the <code>/etc/sysconfig/selinux</code> file. • Run the sestatus operating system command. • Check the <code>/var/log/messages</code> file for SELinux notices. <p>Restriction: SELinux must be disabled for IBM Spectrum Protect installations and upgrades.</p> <p>To disable SELinux, complete one of the following tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To set permissive mode, run the <code>setenforce 0</code> command as a superuser. • Modify the <code>/etc/sysconfig/selinux</code> file and restart the machine. |
| Communication protocol | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6, which is standard with Linux • Shared memory protocol |
| Processing | <p>Asynchronous I/O must be enabled. On Linux kernels at 2.6 or later, install the libaio library to enable asynchronous I/O.</p> |

Table 11. Software requirements (continued)

| Type of software | Minimum software requirements |
|------------------|---|
| Other software | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Korn Shell (ksh) • To authenticate IBM Spectrum Protect users with a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server, you must use one of the following directory servers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Microsoft Active Directory (Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2016) – IBM Security Directory Server V6.3 – IBM Security Directory Server V6.4 |

Restriction: Raw logical volumes are not supported.

Compatibility of the IBM Spectrum Protect server with other IBM Db2 products on the system

You can install other products that deploy and use Db2 products on the same system as the IBM Spectrum Protect server, with some limitations.

To install and use other products that use a Db2 product on the same system as the IBM Spectrum Protect server, ensure that the following criteria are met:

Table 12. Compatibility of the IBM Spectrum Protect server with other DB2® products on the system

| Criterion | Instructions |
|--------------------------|---|
| Version level | <p>The other products that use a Db2 product must use Db2 Version 9 or later.</p> <p>Db2 products include product encapsulation and segregation support beginning with Version 9. Starting with this version, you can run multiple copies of Db2 products, at different code levels, on the same system.</p> <p>For details, see the information about multiple copies in the Db2 product information.</p> |
| User IDs and directories | <p>Ensure that the user IDs, fence user IDs, installation location, other directories, and related information are not shared across Db2 installations. Your specifications must be different from the IDs and locations that you used for the IBM Spectrum Protect server installation and configuration. If you used the dsmicfgx wizard to configure the server, these are values that you entered when running the wizard. If you used the manual configuration method, review the procedures that you used if necessary to recall the values that were used for the server.</p> |

Table 12. Compatibility of the IBM Spectrum Protect server with other DB2® products on the system (continued)

| Criterion | Instructions |
|---------------------|---|
| Resource allocation | <p>Consider the resources and capability of the system compared to the requirements for both the IBM Spectrum Protect server and the other applications that use the Db2 product.</p> <p>To provide sufficient resources for the other Db2 applications, you might have to change the IBM Spectrum Protect server settings so that the server uses less system memory and resources.</p> <p>Similarly, if the workloads for the other Db2 applications compete with the IBM Spectrum Protect server for processor or memory resources, the performance of the server in handling the expected client workload or other server operations might be adversely affected.</p> <p>To segregate resources and provide more capability for the tuning and allocation of processor, memory, and other system resources for multiple applications, consider using logical partition (LPAR), workload partition (WPAR), or other virtual workstation support. For example, run a Db2 application on its own virtualized system.</p> |

IBM Installation Manager

IBM Spectrum Protect uses IBM Installation Manager, which is an installation program that can use remote or local software repositories to install or update many IBM products.

If the required version of IBM Installation Manager is not already installed, it is automatically installed or upgraded when you install IBM Spectrum Protect. It must remain installed on the system so that IBM Spectrum Protect can be updated or uninstalled later as needed.

The following list contains explanations of some terms that are used in IBM Installation Manager:

Offering

An installable unit of a software product.

The IBM Spectrum Protect offering contains all of the media that IBM Installation Manager requires to install IBM Spectrum Protect.

Package

The group of software components that are required to install an offering.

The IBM Spectrum Protect package contains the following components:

- IBM Installation Manager installation program
- IBM Spectrum Protect offering

Package group

A set of packages that share a common parent directory.

The default package group for the IBM Spectrum Protect package is IBM Installation Manager.

Repository

A remote or local storage area for data and other application resources.

The IBM Spectrum Protect package is stored in a repository on IBM Fix Central.

Shared resources directory

A directory that contains software files or plug-ins that are shared by packages.

IBM Installation Manager stores installation-related files in the shared resources directory, including files that are used for rolling back to a previous version of IBM Spectrum Protect.

Worksheets for planning details for the server

You can use the worksheets to help you plan the amount and location of storage needed for the IBM Spectrum Protect server. You can also use them to keep track of names and user IDs.

| Item | Space required | Number of directories | Location of directories |
|---|----------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| The database | | | |
| Active log | | | |
| Archive log | | | |
| Optional: Log mirror for the active log | | | |
| Optional: Secondary archive log (failover location for archive log) | | | |

| Item | Names and user IDs | Location |
|--|--------------------|----------|
| The <i>instance user ID</i> for the server, which is the ID you use to start and run the IBM Spectrum Protect server | | |
| The <i>home directory</i> for the server, which is the directory that contains the instance user ID | | |
| The database instance name | | |
| The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which is a directory that contains files specifically for this server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files) | | |
| The server name, use a unique name for each server | | |

Capacity planning

Capacity planning for IBM Spectrum Protect includes managing resources such as the database, the recovery log and the shared resource area.

Before you begin

To maximize resources as part of capacity planning, you must estimate space requirements for the database and the recovery log. The shared resource area must have enough space available for each installation or upgrade.

Estimating space requirements for the database

To estimate space requirements for the database, you can use the maximum number of files that can be in server storage at one time or you can use storage pool capacity.

About this task

Consider using at least 25 GB for the initial database space. Provision file system space appropriately. A database size of 25 GB is adequate for a test environment or a library-manager-only environment. For a production server supporting client workloads, the database size is expected to be larger. If you use random-access disk (DISK) storage pools, more database and log storage space is needed than for sequential-access storage pools.

The maximum size of the IBM Spectrum Protect database is 8 TB.

For information about sizing the database in a production environment that is based on the number of files and on storage pool size, see the following topics.

Estimating database space requirements based on the number of files

If you can estimate the maximum number of files that might be in server storage at a time, you can use that number to estimate space requirements for the database.

About this task

To estimate space requirements that is based on the maximum number of files in server storage, use the following guidelines:

- 600 - 1000 bytes for each stored version of a file, including image backups.

Restriction: The guideline does not include space that is used during data deduplication.

- 100 - 200 bytes for each cached file, copy storage pool file, active-data pool file, and deduplicated file.
- Additional space is required for database optimization to support varying data-access patterns and to support server back-end processing of the data. The amount of extra space is equal to 50% of the estimate for the total number of bytes for file objects.

In the following example for a single client, the calculations are based on the maximum values in the preceding guidelines. The examples do not take into account that you might use file aggregation. In general, when you aggregate small files, it reduces the amount of required database space. File aggregation does not affect space-managed files.

Procedure

1. Calculate the number of file versions. Add each of the following values to obtain the number of file versions:

- a) Calculate the number of backed-up files.

For example, as many as 500,000 client files might be backed up at a time. In this example, storage policies are set to keep up to three copies of backed up files:

```
500,000 files * 3 copies = 1,500,000 files
```

- b) Calculate the number of archive files.

For example, as many as 100,000 client files might be archived copies.

- c) Calculate the number of space-managed files.

For example, as many as 200,000 client files might be migrated from client workstations.

Using 1000 bytes per file, the total amount of database space that is required for the files that belong to the client is 1.8 GB:

$$(1,500,000 + 100,000 + 200,000) * 1000 = 1.8 \text{ GB}$$

2. Calculate the number of cached files, copy storage-pool files, active-data pool files, and deduplicated files:

- a) Calculate the number of cached copies.

For example, caching is enabled in a 5 GB disk storage pool. The high migration threshold of the pool is 90% and the low migration threshold of the pool is 70%. Thus, 20% of the disk pool, or 1 GB, is occupied by cached files.

If the average file size is about 10 KB, approximately 100,000 files are in cache at any one time:

$$100,000 \text{ files} * 200 \text{ bytes} = 19 \text{ MB}$$

- b) Calculate the number of copy storage-pool files.

All primary storage pools are backed up to the copy storage pool:

$$(1,500,000 + 100,000 + 200,000) * 200 \text{ bytes} = 343 \text{ MB}$$

- c) Calculate the number of active storage-pool files.

All the active client-backup data in primary storage pools is copied to the active-data storage pool. Assume that 500,000 versions of the 1,500,000 backup files in the primary storage pool are active:

$$500,000 * 200 \text{ bytes} = 95 \text{ MB}$$

- d) Calculate the number of deduplicated files.

Assume that a deduplicated storage pool contains 50,000 files:

$$50,000 * 200 \text{ bytes} = 10 \text{ MB}$$

Based on the preceding calculations, about 0.5 GB of extra database space is required for the client's cached files, copy storage-pool files, active-data pool files, and deduplicated files.

3. Calculate the amount of extra space that is required for database optimization.

To provide optimal data access and management by the server, extra database space is required. The amount of extra database space is equal to 50% of the total space requirements for file objects.

$$(1.8 + 0.5) * 50\% = 1.2 \text{ GB}$$

4. Calculate the total amount of database space that is required for the client. The total is approximately 3.5 GB:

$$1.8 + 0.5 + 1.2 = 3.5 \text{ GB}$$

5. Calculate the total amount of database space that is required for all clients.

If the client that was used in the preceding calculations is typical and you have 500 clients, for example, you can use the following calculation to estimate the total amount of database space that is required for all clients:

$$500 * 3.5 = 1.7 \text{ TB}$$

Results

Tip: In the preceding examples, the results are estimates. The actual size of the database might differ from the estimate because of factors such as the number of directories and the length of the path and file names. Periodically monitor your database and adjust its size as necessary.

What to do next

During normal operations, the IBM Spectrum Protect server might require temporary database space. This space is needed for the following reasons:

- To hold the results of sorting or ordering that are not already being kept and optimized in the database directly. The results are temporarily held in the database for processing.
- To give administrative access to the database through one of the following methods:
 - A Db2 open database connectivity (ODBC) client
 - An Oracle Java database connectivity (JDBC) client
 - Structured Query Language (SQL) to the server from an administrative-client command line

Consider using an extra 50 GB of temporary space for every 500 GB of space for file objects and optimization. See the guidelines in the following table. In the example that is used in the preceding step, a total of 1.7 TB of database space is required for file objects and optimization for 500 clients. Based on that calculation, 200 GB is required for temporary space. The total amount of required database space is 1.9 TB.

| Database size | Minimum temporary-space requirement |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|
| < 500 GB | 50 GB |
| ≥ 500 GB and < 1 TB | 100 GB |
| ≥ 1 TB and < 1.5 TB | 150 GB |
| ≥ 1.5 and < 2 TB | 200 GB |
| ≥ 2 and < 3 TB | 250 - 300 GB |
| ≥ 3 and < 4 TB | 350 - 400 GB |

Estimating database space requirements based on storage pool capacity

To estimate database space requirements based on storage pool capacity, use a ratio of 1 - 5%. For example, if you require 200 TB of storage pool capacity, the size of your database is expected to be 2 - 10 TB. As a general rule, make your database as large as possible to prevent running out of space. If you run out of database space, server operations and client-store operations can fail.

The database manager and temporary space

The IBM Spectrum Protect server database manager manages and allocates system memory and disk space for the database. The amount of database space you require depends on the amount of system memory available and the server workload.

The database manager sorts data in a specific sequence, according to the SQL statement that you issue to request the data. Depending on the workload on the server, and if there is more data than the database manager can manage, the data (that is ordered in sequence) is allocated to temporary disk space. Data is allocated to temporary disk space when there is a large result set. The database manager dynamically manages the memory that is used when data is allocated to temporary disk space.

For example, expiration processing can produce a large result set. If there is not enough system memory on the database to store the result set, some of the data is allocated to temporary disk space. During expiration processing, if a node or file space are selected that are too large to process, the database manager cannot sort the data in memory. The database manager must use temporary space to sort data.

To run database operations, consider adding more database space for the following scenarios:

- The database has a small amount of space and the server operation that requires temporary space uses the remaining free space.
- The file spaces are large, or the file spaces have an assigned policy that creates many file versions.
- The IBM Spectrum Protect server must run with limited memory. The database uses the IBM Spectrum Protect server main memory to run database operations. However, if there is insufficient memory available, the IBM Spectrum Protect server allocates temporary space on disk to the database. For

example, if 10G of memory is available and database operations require 12G of memory, the database uses temporary space.

- An out of database space error is displayed when you deploy an IBM Spectrum Protect server. Monitor the server activity log for messages that are related to database space.

Important: Do not change the Db2 software that is installed with the IBM Spectrum Protect installation packages and fix packs. Do not install or upgrade to a different version, release, or fix pack, of Db2 software to avoid damage to the database.

Recovery log space requirements

In IBM Spectrum Protect, the term *recovery log* comprises the active log, the archive log, the active log mirror, and the archive failover log. The amount of space that you require for the recovery log depends on various factors, including, for example, the amount of client activity with the server.

Active and archive log space

When you estimate space requirements for active and archive logs, include some extra space for contingencies such as occasional heavy workloads and failovers.

In IBM Spectrum Protect servers V7.1 and later, the active log can be a maximum size of 512 GB. The archive log size is limited to the size of the file system that it is installed on.

Use the following general guidelines when you estimate the size of the active log:

- The suggested starting size for the active log is 16 GB.
- Ensure that the active log is at least large enough for the amount of concurrent activity that the server typically handles. As a precaution, try to anticipate the largest amount of work that the server manages at one time. Provision the active log with extra space that can be used if needed. Consider using 20% of extra space.
- Monitor used and available active log space. Adjust the size of the active log as needed, depending upon factors such as client activity and the level of server operations.
- Ensure that the directory that holds the active log is as large as, or larger than, the size of the active log. A directory that is larger than the active log can accommodate failovers, if they occur.
- Ensure that the file system that contains the active log directory has at least 8 GB of free space for temporary log movement requirements.

The suggested starting size for the archive log is 48 GB.

The archive log directory must be large enough to contain the log files that are generated since the previous full backup. For example, if you perform a full backup of the database every day, the archive log directory must be large enough to hold the log files for all the client activity that occurs during 24 hours. To recover space, the server deletes obsolete archive log files after a full backup of the database. If the archive log directory becomes full and a directory for archive failover logs does not exist, log files remain in the active log directory. This condition can cause the active log directory to fill up and stop the server. When the server restarts, some of the existing active-log space is released.

After the server is installed, you can monitor archive log utilization and the space in the archive log directory. If the space in the archive log directory fills up, it can cause the following problems:

- The server is unable to perform full database backups. Investigate and resolve this problem.
- Other applications write to the archive log directory, exhausting the space that is required by the archive log. Do not share archive log space with other applications including other IBM Spectrum Protect servers. Ensure that each server has a separate storage location that is owned and managed by that specific server.

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes for basic client-store operations

Basic client-store operations include backup, archive, and space management. Log space must be sufficient to handle all store transactions that are in progress at one time.

To determine the sizes of the active and archive logs for basic client-store operations, use the following calculation:

```

number of clients x files stored during each transaction
x log space needed for each file

```

This calculation is used in the example in the following table.

| <i>Table 13. Basic client-store operations</i> | | |
|---|----------------------|--|
| Item | Example values | Description |
| Maximum number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files concurrently at any time | 300 | The number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files every night. |
| Files stored during each transaction | 4096 | The default value of the server option TXNGROUPMAX is 4096. |
| Log space that is required for each file | 3053 bytes | <p>The value of 3053 bytes for each file in a transaction represents the log bytes that are needed when backing up files from a Windows client where the file names are 12 - 120 bytes.</p> <p>This value is based on the results of tests performed under laboratory conditions. The tests consisted of backup-archive clients performing backup operations to a random-access disk (DISK) storage pool. DISK pools result in more log use than sequential-access storage pools. Consider a value larger than 3053 bytes if the data being stored has file names that are longer than 12 - 120 bytes.</p> |
| Active log: Suggested size | 19.5 GB ¹ | <p>Use the following calculation to determine the size of the active log. One GB equals 1,073,741,824 bytes.</p> <p>(300 clients x 4096 files stored during each transaction x 3053 bytes for each file) ÷ 1,073,741,824 bytes = 3.5 GB</p> <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> <p>3.5 + 16 = 19.5 GB</p> |
| Archive log: Suggested size | 58.5 GB ¹ | <p>Because of the requirement to be able to store archive logs across three server database-backup cycles, multiply the estimate for the active log by 3 to estimate the total archive log requirement.</p> <p>3.5 x 3 = 10.5 GB</p> <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> <p>10.5 + 48 = 58.5 GB</p> |
| <p>¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that does not use deduplication, 16 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested minimum size for an archive log in a production environment that does not use deduplication is 48 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 16 GB and 48 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log.</p> <p>Monitor your logs and adjust their size if necessary.</p> | | |

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes for clients that use multiple sessions

If the client option RESOURCEUTILIZATION is set to a value that is greater than the default, the concurrent workload for the server increases.

To determine the sizes of the active and archive logs when clients use multiple sessions, use the following calculation:

$$\text{number of clients} \times \text{sessions for each client} \times \text{files stored during each transaction} \times \text{log space needed for each file}$$

This calculation is used in the example in the following table.

| <i>Table 14. Multiple client sessions</i> | | | |
|---|----------------|------|--|
| Item | Example values | | Description |
| Maximum number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files concurrently at any time | 300 | 1000 | The number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files every night. |
| Possible sessions for each client | 3 | 3 | The setting of the client option RESOURCEUTILIZATION is larger than the default. Each client session runs a maximum of three sessions in parallel. |
| Files stored during each transaction | 4096 | 4096 | The default value of the server option TXNGROUPMAX is 4096. |
| Log space that is required for each file | 3053 | 3053 | <p>The value of 3053 bytes for each file in a transaction represents the log bytes needed when backing up files from a Windows client where the file names are 12 - 120 bytes.</p> <p>This value is based on the results of tests performed under laboratory conditions. Tests consisted of clients performing backup operations to a random-access disk (DISK) storage pool. DISK pools result in more log use than sequential-access storage pools. Consider a value larger than 3053 bytes if the data being stored has file names that are longer than 12 - 120 bytes.</p> |

Table 14. Multiple client sessions (continued)

| Item | Example values | | Description |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|---|
| Active log: Suggested size | 26.5 GB ¹ | 51 GB ¹ | <p>The following calculation was used for 300 clients. One GB equals 1,073,741,824 bytes.</p> $(300 \text{ clients} \times 3 \text{ sessions for each client} \times 4096 \text{ files stored during each transaction} \times 3053 \text{ bytes for each file}) \div 1,073,741,824 = 10.5 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> $10.5 + 16 = 26.5 \text{ GB}$ <p>The following calculation was used for 1000 clients. One GB equals 1,073,741,824 bytes.</p> $(1000 \text{ clients} \times 3 \text{ sessions for each client} \times 4096 \text{ files stored during each transaction} \times 3053 \text{ bytes for each file}) \div 1,073,741,824 = 35 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> $35 + 16 = 51 \text{ GB}$ |
| Archive log: Suggested size | 79.5 GB ¹ | 153 GB ¹ | <p>Because of the requirement to be able to store archive logs across three server-database backup cycles, the estimate for the active log is multiplied by 3:</p> $10.5 \times 3 = 31.5 \text{ GB}$ $35 \times 3 = 105 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase those amounts by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $31.5 + 48 = 79.5 \text{ GB}$ $105 + 48 = 153 \text{ GB}$ |

¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that does not use deduplication, 16 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested minimum size for an archive log in a production environment that does not use deduplication is 48 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 16 GB and 48 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log.

Monitor your active log and adjust its size if necessary.

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes for simultaneous write operations

If client backup operations use storage pools that are configured for simultaneous write, the amount of log space that is required for each file increases.

The log space that is required for each file increases by about 200 bytes for each copy storage pool that is used for a simultaneous write operation. In the example in the following table, data is stored to two copy storage pools in addition to a primary storage pool. The estimated log size increases by 400 bytes for each file. If you use the suggested value of 3053 bytes of log space for each file, the total number of required bytes is 3453.

This calculation is used in the example in the following table.

| Table 15. Simultaneous write operations | | |
|---|--------------------|---|
| Item | Example values | Description |
| Maximum number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files concurrently at any time | 300 | The number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files every night. |
| Files stored during each transaction | 4096 | The default value of the server option TXNGROUPMAX is 4096. |
| Log space that is required for each file | 3453 bytes | <p>3053 bytes plus 200 bytes for each copy storage pool.</p> <p>The value of 3053 bytes for each file in a transaction represents the log bytes that are needed when backing up files from a Windows client where the file names are 12 - 120 bytes.</p> <p>This value is based on the results of tests performed under laboratory conditions. The tests consisted of backup-archive clients performing backup operations to a random-access disk (DISK) storage pool. DISK pools result in more log use than sequential-access storage pools. Consider a value larger than 3053 bytes if the data being stored has file names that are longer than 12 - 120 bytes.</p> |
| Active log: Suggested size | 20 GB ¹ | <p>Use the following calculation to determine the size of the active log. One GB equals 1,073,741,824 bytes.</p> <p>$(300 \text{ clients} \times 4096 \text{ files stored during each transaction} \times 3453 \text{ bytes for each file}) \div 1,073,741,824 \text{ bytes} = 4.0 \text{ GB}$</p> <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> <p>$4 + 16 = 20 \text{ GB}$</p> |
| Archive log: Suggested size | 60 GB ¹ | <p>Because of the requirement to be able to store archive logs across three server database-backup cycles, multiply the estimate for the active log by 3 to estimate the archive log requirement:</p> <p>$4 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 12 \text{ GB}$</p> <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> <p>$12 + 48 = 60 \text{ GB}$</p> |
| <p>¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that does not use deduplication, 16 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested minimum size for an archive log in a production environment that does not use deduplication is 48 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 16 GB and 48 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log.</p> <p>Monitor your logs and adjust their size if necessary.</p> | | |

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes for basic client store operations and server operations

Migration of data in server storage, identification processes for data deduplication, reclamation, and expiration might run concurrently with client store operations. Administrative tasks such as administrative commands or SQL queries from administrative clients can also run concurrently with client

store operations. Server operations and administrative tasks that run concurrently can increase the active log space that is required.

For example, migration of files from the random-access (DISK) storage pool to a sequential-access disk (FILE) storage pool uses approximately 110 bytes of log space for each file that is migrated. For example, suppose that you have 300 backup-archive clients and each one of them backs up 100,000 files every night. The files are initially stored on DISK and then migrated to a FILE storage pool. To estimate the amount of active log space that is required for the data migration, use the following calculation. The number of clients in the calculation represents the maximum number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files concurrently at any time.

```
300 clients x 100,000 files for each client x 110 bytes = 3.1 GB
```

Add this value to the estimate for the size of the active log that calculated for basic client store operations.

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes under conditions of extreme variation

Problems with running out of active log space can occur if you have many transactions that complete quickly and some transactions that take much longer to complete. A typical case occurs when many workstation or file-server backup sessions are active and a few very large database server-backup sessions are active. If this situation applies to your environment, you might need to increase the size of the active log so that the work completes successfully.

Example: Estimating archive log sizes with full database backups

The IBM Spectrum Protect server deletes unnecessary files from the archive log only when a full database backup occurs. Consequently, when you estimate the space that is required for the archive log, you must also consider the frequency of full database backups.

For example, if a full database backup occurs once a week, the archive log space must be able to contain the information in the archive log for a full week.

The difference in archive log size for daily and full database backups is shown in the example in the following table.

| Table 16. Full database backups | | |
|---|----------------|---|
| Item | Example values | Description |
| Maximum number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files concurrently at any time | 300 | The number of client nodes that back up, archive, or migrate files every night. |
| Files stored during each transaction | 4096 | The default value of the server option TXNGROUPMAX is 4096. |
| Log space that is required for each file | 3453 bytes | <p>3053 bytes for each file plus 200 bytes for each copy storage pool.</p> <p>The value of 3053 bytes for each file in a transaction represents the log bytes needed when backing up files from a Windows client where the file names are 12 - 120 bytes.</p> <p>This value is based on the results of tests performed under laboratory conditions. Tests consisted of clients performing backup operations to a random-access disk (DISK) storage pool. DISK pools result in more log use than sequential-access storage pools. Consider a value larger than 3053 bytes if the data being stored has file names that are longer than 12 - 120 bytes.</p> |

| Table 16. Full database backups (continued) | | |
|--|---------------------|---|
| Item | Example values | Description |
| Active log: Suggested size | 20 GB ¹ | <p>Use the following calculation to determine the size of the active log. One GB equals 1,073,741,824 bytes.</p> $(300 \text{ clients} \times 4096 \text{ files per transaction} \times 3453 \text{ bytes per file}) \div 1,073,741,824 \text{ bytes} = 4.0 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> $4 + 16 = 20 \text{ GB}$ |
| Archive log: Suggested size with a full database backup every day | 60 GB ¹ | <p>Because of the requirement to be able to store archive logs across three backup cycles, multiply the estimate for the active log by 3 to estimate the total archive log requirement:</p> $4 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 12 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $12 + 48 = 60 \text{ GB}$ |
| Archive log: Suggested size with a full database every week | 132 GB ¹ | <p>Because of the requirement to be able to store archive logs across three server database-backup cycles, multiply the estimate for the active log by 3 to estimate the total archive log requirement. Multiply the result by the number of days between full database backups:</p> $(4 \text{ GB} \times 3) \times 7 = 84 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $84 + 48 = 132 \text{ GB}$ |
| <p>¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that does not use deduplication, 16 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested starting size for an archive log in a production environment that does not use deduplication is 48 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 16 GB and 48 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log.</p> <p>Monitor your logs and adjust their size if necessary.</p> | | |

Example: Estimating active and archive log sizes for data deduplication operations

If you deduplicate data, you must consider its effects on space requirements for active and archive logs.

The following factors affect requirements for active and archive log space:

The amount of deduplicated data

The effect of data deduplication on the active log and archive log space depends on the percentage of data that is eligible for deduplication. If the percentage of data that can be deduplicated is relatively high, more log space is required.

The size and number of extents

Approximately 1,500 bytes of active log space are required for each extent that is identified by a duplicate-identification process. For example, if 250,000 extents are identified by a duplicate-identification process, the estimated size of the active log is 358 MB:

```
250,000 extents identified during each process x 1,500 bytes
for each extent = 358 MB
```

Consider the following scenario. Three hundred backup-archive clients back up 100,000 files each night. This activity creates a workload of 30,000,000 files. The average number of extents for each file is two. Therefore, the total number of extents is 60,000,000, and the space requirement for the archive log is 84 GB:

```
60,000,000 extents x 1,500 bytes for each extent = 84 GB
```

A duplicate-identification process operates on aggregates of files. An aggregate consists of files that are stored in a given transaction, as specified by the TXNGROUPMAX server option. Suppose that the TXNGROUPMAX server option is set to the default of 4096. If the average number of extents for each file is two, the total number of extents in each aggregate is 8192, and the space required for the active log is 12 MB:

```
8192 extents in each aggregate x 1500 bytes for each extent =
12 MB
```

The timing and number of the duplicate-identification processes

The timing and number of duplicate-identification processes also affects the size of the active log. Using the 12 MB active-log size that was calculated in the preceding example, the concurrent load on the active log is 120 MB if 10 duplicate-identification processes are running in parallel:

```
12 MB for each process x 10 processes = 120 MB
```

File size

Large files that are processed for duplicate identification can also affect the size of the active log. For example, suppose that a backup-archive client backs up an 80 GB, file-system image. This object can have a high number of duplicate extents if, for example, the files included in the file system image were backed up incrementally. For example, assume that a file system image has 1.2 million duplicate extents. The 1.2 million extents in this large file represent a single transaction for a duplicate-identification process. The total space in the active log that is required for this single object is 1.7 GB:

```
1,200,000 extents x 1,500 bytes for each extent = 1.7 GB
```

If other, smaller duplicate-identification processes occur at the same time as the duplicate-identification process for a single large object, the active log might not have enough space. For example, suppose that a storage pool is enabled for deduplication. The storage pool has a mixture of data, including many relatively small files that range from 10 KB to several hundred KB. The storage pool also has few large objects that have a high percentage of duplicate extents.

To take into account not only space requirements but also the timing and duration of concurrent transactions, increase the estimated size of the active log by a factor of two. For example, suppose that your calculations for space requirements are 25 GB (23.3 GB + 1.7 GB for deduplication of a large object). If deduplication processes are running concurrently, the suggested size of the active log is 50 GB. The suggested size of the archive log is 150 GB.

The examples in the following tables show calculations for active and archive logs. The example in the first table uses an average size of 700 KB for extents. The example in the second table uses an average size of 256 KB. As the examples show, the average deduplicate-extent size of 256 KB indicates a larger estimated size for the active log. To minimize or prevent operational problems for the server, use 256 KB to estimate the size of the active log in your production environment.

| Table 17. Average duplicate-extent size of 700 KB | | | |
|--|--------------------|----------------------|---|
| Item | Example values | | Description |
| Size of largest single object to deduplicate | 800 GB | 4 TB | The granularity of processing for deduplication is at the file level. Therefore, the largest single file to deduplicate represents the largest transaction and a correspondingly large load on the active and archive logs. |
| Average size of extents | 700 KB | 700 KB | The deduplication algorithms use a variable block method. Not all deduplicated extents for a given file are the same size, so this calculation assumes an average size for extents. |
| Extents for a given file | 1,198,372 bits | 6,135,667 bits | Using the average extent size (700 KB), these calculations represent the total number of extents for a given object. The following calculation was used for an 800 GB object: $(800 \text{ GB} \div 700 \text{ KB}) = 1,198,372 \text{ bits}$ The following calculation was used for a 4 TB object: $(4 \text{ TB} \div 700 \text{ KB}) = 6,135,667 \text{ bits}$ |
| Active log: Suggested size that is required for the deduplication of a single large object during a single duplicate-identification process | 1.7 GB | 8.6 GB | The estimated active log space that are needed for this transaction. |
| Active log: Suggested total size | 66 GB ¹ | 79.8 GB ¹ | After considering other aspects of the workload on the server in addition to deduplication, multiply the existing estimate by a factor of two. In these examples, the active log space required to deduplicate a single large object is considered along with previous estimates for the required active log size. The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and an 800 GB object: $(23.3 \text{ GB} + 1.7 \text{ GB}) \times 2 = 50 \text{ GB}$ Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB: $50 + 16 = 66 \text{ GB}$ The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and a 4 TB object: $(23.3 \text{ GB} + 8.6 \text{ GB}) \times 2 = 63.8 \text{ GB}$ Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB: $63.8 + 16 = 79.8 \text{ GB}$ |

Table 17. Average duplicate-extent size of 700 KB (continued)

| Item | Example values | | Description |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|---|
| Archive log: Suggested size | 198 GB ¹ | 239.4 GB ¹ | <p>Multiply the estimated size of the active log by a factor of 3.</p> <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and an 800 GB object:</p> $50 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 150 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $150 + 48 = 198 \text{ GB}$ <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and a 4 TB object:</p> $63.8 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 191.4 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $191.4 + 48 = 239.4 \text{ GB}$ |

¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that uses deduplication, 32 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested minimum size for an archive log in a production environment that uses deduplication is 96 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 32 GB and 96 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log.

Monitor your logs and adjust their size if necessary.

Table 18. Average duplicate-extent size of 256 KB

| Item | Example values | | Description |
|--|----------------|-----------------|--|
| Size of largest single object to deduplicate | 800 GB | 4 TB | The granularity of processing for deduplication is at the file level. Therefore, the largest single file to deduplicate represents the largest transaction and a correspondingly large load on the active and archive logs. |
| Average size of extents | 256 KB | 256 KB | The deduplication algorithms use a variable block method. Not all deduplicated extents for a given file are the same size, so this calculation assumes an average extent size. |
| Extents for a given file | 3,276,800 bits | 16,777,216 bits | <p>Using the average extent size, these calculations represent the total number of extents for a given object.</p> <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and an 800 GB object:</p> $(800 \text{ GB} \div 256 \text{ KB}) = 3,276,800 \text{ bits}$ <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and a 4 TB object:</p> $(4 \text{ TB} \div 256 \text{ KB}) = 16,777,216 \text{ bits}$ |

| Table 18. Average duplicate-extent size of 256 KB (continued) | | | |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Item | Example values | | Description |
| Active log: Suggested size that is required for the deduplication of a single large object during a single duplicate-identification process | 4.5 GB | 23.4 GB | The estimated size of the active log space that is required for this transaction. |
| Active log: Suggested total size | 71.6 GB ¹ | 109.4 GB ¹ | <p>After considering other aspects of the workload on the server in addition to deduplication, multiply the existing estimate by a factor of 2. In these examples, the active log space required to deduplicate a single large object is considered along with previous estimates for the required active log size.</p> <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and an 800 GB object:</p> $(23.3 \text{ GB} + 4.5 \text{ GB}) \times 2 = 55.6 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> $55.6 + 16 = 71.6 \text{ GB}$ <p>The following calculation was used for multiple transactions and a 4 TB object:</p> $(23.3 \text{ GB} + 23.4 \text{ GB}) \times 2 = 93.4 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 16 GB:</p> $93.4 + 16 = 109.4 \text{ GB}$ |
| Archive log: Suggested size | 214.8 GB ¹ | 328.2 GB ¹ | <p>The estimated size of the active log multiplied by a factor of 3.</p> <p>The following calculation was used for an 800 GB object:</p> $55.6 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 166.8 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $166.8 + 48 = 214.8 \text{ GB}$ <p>The following calculation was used for a 4 TB object:</p> $93.4 \text{ GB} \times 3 = 280.2 \text{ GB}$ <p>Increase that amount by the suggested starting size of 48 GB:</p> $280.2 + 48 = 328.2 \text{ GB}$ |

Table 18. Average duplicate-extent size of 256 KB (continued)

| Item | Example values | Description |
|--|----------------|-------------|
| ¹ The example values in this table are used only to illustrate how the sizes for active logs and archive logs are calculated. In a production environment that uses deduplication, 32 GB is the suggested minimum size for an active log. The suggested minimum size for an archive log in a production environment that uses deduplication is 96 GB. If you substitute values from your environment and the results are larger than 32 GB and 96 GB, use your results to size the active log and archive log. Monitor your logs and adjust their size if necessary. | | |

Active-log mirror space

The active log can be mirrored so that the mirrored copy can be used if the active log files cannot be read. There can be only one active log mirror.

Creating a log mirror is a suggested option. If you increase the size of the active log, the log mirror size is increased automatically. Mirroring the log can affect performance because of the doubled I/O activity that is required to maintain the mirror. The additional space that the log mirror requires is another factor to consider when deciding whether to create a log mirror.

If the mirror log directory becomes full, the server issues error messages to the activity log and to the db2diag.log. Server activity continues.

Archive-failover log space

The archive failover log is used by the server if the archive log directory runs out of space.

Specifying an archive failover log directory can prevent problems that occur if the archive log runs out of space. If both the archive log directory and the drive or file system where the archive failover log directory is located become full, the data remains in the active log directory. This condition can cause the active log to fill up, which causes the server to halt.

Monitoring space utilization for the database and recovery logs

To determine the amount of used and available active log space, you issue the **QUERY LOG** command. To monitor space utilization in the database and recovery logs, you can also check the activity log for messages.

Active log

If the amount of available active log space is too low, the following messages are displayed in the activity log:

ANR4531I: IC_AUTOBACKUP_LOG_USED_SINCE_LAST_BACKUP_TRIGGER

This message is displayed when the active log space exceeds the maximum specified size. The IBM Spectrum Protect server starts a full database backup.

To change the maximum log size, halt the server. Open the dsmserve.opt file, and specify a new value for the ACTIVELOGSIZE option. When you are finished, restart the server.

ANR0297I: IC_BACKUP_NEEDED_LOG_USED_SINCE_LAST_BACKUP

This message is displayed when the active log space exceeds the maximum specified size. You must back up the database manually.

To change the maximum log size, halt the server. Open the dsmserve.opt file, and specify a new value for the ACTIVELOGSIZE option. When you are finished, restart the server.

ANR4529I: IC_AUTOBACKUP_LOG_UTILIZATION_TRIGGER

The ratio of used active-log space to available active-log space exceeds the log utilization threshold. If at least one full database backup has occurred, the IBM Spectrum Protect server starts an incremental database backup. Otherwise, the server starts a full database backup.

ANR0295I: IC_BACKUP_NEEDED_LOG_UTILIZATION

The ratio of used active-log space to available active-log space exceeds the log utilization threshold. You must back up the database manually.

Archive log

If the amount of available archive log space is too low, the following message is displayed in the activity log:

ANR0299I: IC_BACKUP_NEEDED_ARCHLOG_USED

The ratio of used archive-log space to available archive-log space exceeds the log utilization threshold. The IBM Spectrum Protect server starts a full automatic database backup.

Database

If the amount of space available for database activities is too low, the following messages are displayed in the activity log:

ANR2992W: IC_LOG_FILE_SYSTEM_UTILIZATION_WARNING_2

The used database space exceeds the threshold for database space utilization. To increase the space for the database, use the **EXTEND DBSPACE** command, the **EXTEND DBSPACE** command, or the DSMSEV FORMAT utility with the **DBDIR** parameter.

ANR1546W: FILESYSTEM_DBPATH_LESS_1GB

The available space in the directory where the server database files are located is less than 1 GB.

When an IBM Spectrum Protect server is created with the DSMSEV FORMAT utility or with the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are also created. In addition, files are created to hold database information used by the database manager. The path specified in this message indicates the location of the database information used by the database manager. If space is unavailable in the path, the server can no longer function.

You must add space to the file system or make space available on the file system or disk.

Deleting installation rollback files

You can delete certain installation files that were saved during the installation process to free space in the shared resource directory. For example, files that might have been required for a rollback operation are types of files that you can delete.

About this task

To delete the files that are no longer needed, use either the installation graphical wizard or the command line in console mode.

Deleting installation rollback files by using a graphical wizard

You can delete certain installation files that were saved during installation process by using the IBM Installation Manager user interface.

Procedure

1. Open IBM Installation Manager.

In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the `eclipse` subdirectory (for example, `/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse`), and issue the following command to start IBM Installation Manager:

```
./IBMIM
```

2. Click **File > Preferences**.
3. Select **Files for Rollback**.
4. Click **Delete Saved Files** and click **OK**.

Deleting installation rollback files by using the command line

You can delete certain installation files that were saved during the installation process by using the command line.

Procedure

1. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the following subdirectory:

`eclipse/tools`

For example:

`/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools`

2. From the `tools` directory, issue the following command to start an IBM Installation Manager command line:

`./imcl -c`

3. Enter P to select **Preferences**.
4. Enter 3 to select **Files for Rollback**.
5. Enter D to **Delete** the **Files for Rollback**.
6. Enter A to **Apply Changes and Return to Preferences Menu**.
7. Enter C to leave the **Preference Menu**.
8. Enter X to **Exit Installation Manager**.

Server naming best practices

Use these descriptions as a reference when you install or upgrade an IBM Spectrum Protect server.

Instance user ID

The instance user ID is used as the basis for other names related to the server instance. The instance user ID is also called the instance owner.

For example: `tsminst1`

The instance user ID is the user ID that must have ownership or read/write access authority to all directories that you create for the database and the recovery log. The standard way to run the server is under the instance user ID. That user ID must also have read/write access to the directories that are used for any **FILE** device classes.

Home directory for the instance user ID

The home directory can be created when creating the instance user ID, by using the option `(-m)` to create a home directory if it does not exist already. Depending on local settings, the home directory might have the form: `/home/instance_user_ID`

For example: `/home/tsminst1`

The home directory is primarily used to contain the profile for the user ID and for security settings.

Database instance name

The database instance name must be the same as the instance user ID under which you run the server instance.

For example: `tsminst1`

Instance directory

The instance directory is a directory that contains files specifically for a server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files). It can have any name that you want. For easier identification, use a name that ties the directory to the instance name.

You can create the instance directory as a subdirectory of the home directory for the instance user ID. For example: `/home/instance_user_ID/instance_user_ID`

The following example places the instance directory in the home directory for user ID `tsminst1`: `/home/tsminst1/tsminst1`

You can also create the directory in another location, for example: `/tsmserver/tsminst1`

The instance directory stores the following files for the server instance:

- The server options file, `dsmserv.opt`
- The server key database file, `cert.kdb`, and the `.arm` files (used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server)
- Device configuration file, if the `DEVCONFIG` server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volume history file, if the `VOLUMEHISTORY` server option does not specify a fully qualified name
- Volumes for **DEVTYPE=FILE** storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
- User exits
- Trace output (if not fully qualified)

Database name

The database name is always `TSMDB1`, for every server instance. This name cannot be changed.

Server name

The server name is an internal name for IBM Spectrum Protect, and is used for operations that involve communication among multiple IBM Spectrum Protect servers. Examples include server-to-server communication and library sharing.

The server name is also used when you add the server to the Operations Center so that it can be managed using that interface. Use a unique name for each server. For easy identification in the Operations Center (or from a **QUERY SERVER** command), use a name that reflects the location or purpose of the server. Do not change the name of an IBM Spectrum Protect server after it is configured as a hub or spoke server.

If you use the wizard, the default name that is suggested is the host name of the system that you are using. You can use a different name that is meaningful in your environment. If you have more than one server on the system and you use the wizard, you can use the default name for only one of the servers. You must enter a unique name for each server.

For example:

```
PAYROLL
SALES
```

Directories for database space and recovery log

The directories can be named according to local practices. For easier identification, consider using names that tie the directories to the server instance.

For example, for the archive log:

```
/tsminst1_archlog
```

Installation directories

Installation directories for the IBM Spectrum Protect server include the server, IBM Db2, device, language, and other directories. Each one contains several additional directories.

The `(/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin)` is the default directory that contains server code and licensing.

Installing the IBM Spectrum Protect server

The Db2 product that is installed as part of the installation of the IBM Spectrum Protect server has the directory structure as documented in Db2 information sources. Protect these directories and files as you do the server directories. The default directory is `/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2`.

You can use US English, German, French, Italian, Spanish, Brazilian Portuguese, Korean, Japanese, traditional Chinese, simplified Chinese, Chinese GBK, Chinese Big5, and Russian.

Chapter 2. Installing the server components

To install the IBM Spectrum Protect server components, you can use either the installation wizard or the command line in console mode.

About this task

Using the IBM Spectrum Protect installation software, you can install the following components:

- server

Tip: The database (IBM Db2), the Global Security Kit (GSKit) and IBM Java Runtime Environment (JRE) are automatically installed when you select the server component.

- server languages
- license
- devices
- IBM Spectrum Protect for SAN
- Operations Center

Allow approximately 30 - 45 minutes to install a server, using this guide.

Obtaining the installation package

You can obtain the IBM Spectrum Protect installation package from an IBM download site such as Passport Advantage® or IBM Fix Central.

Before you begin

If you plan to download the files, set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly:

1. To query the maximum file size value, issue the following command:

```
ulimit -Hf
```

2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change it to unlimited by following the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

Procedure

1. Download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites.
 - Download the server package from [Passport Advantage](#) or [Fix Central](#).
 - For the latest information, updates, and maintenance fixes, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#).
2. If you downloaded the package from an IBM download site, complete the following steps:
 - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. See the download document for the space requirements:
 - IBM Spectrum Protect [technote 588021](#)
 - IBM Spectrum Protect Extended Edition [technote 588023](#)
 - IBM Spectrum Protect for Data Retention [technote 588025](#)
 - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Be sure to extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.
 - c. Ensure that executable permission is set for the package. If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

```
chmod a+x package_name.bin
```

d. Extract the package by issuing the following command:

```
./package_name.bin
```

where *package_name* is the name of the downloaded file, for example:

```
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin  
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxs390x.bin  
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxppc64le.bin
```

3. Select one of the following methods of installing IBM Spectrum Protect:
 - “Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using the installation wizard” on page 72
 - “Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using console mode” on page 73
 - “Installing IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode” on page 73
4. After you install IBM Spectrum Protect, and before you customize it for your use, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#). Click **Support and downloads** and apply any applicable fixes.

Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using the installation wizard

You can install the server by using the IBM Installation Manager graphical wizard.

Before you begin

Take the following actions before you start the installation:

- Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

Procedure

Install IBM Spectrum Protect by using this method:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Installing the software from a downloaded package: | <ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Change to the directory where you downloaded the package.b. Start the installation wizard by issuing the following command: <pre>./install.sh</pre> |

What to do next

- If errors occur during the installation process, the errors are recorded in log files that are stored in the IBM Installation Manager logs directory.

You can view installation log files by clicking **File > View Log** from the Installation Manager tool. To collect these log files, click **Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis** from the Installation Manager tool.

- After you install the server and components, and before you customize it for your use, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#). Click **Downloads (fixes and PTFs)** and apply any applicable fixes.
- After you install a new server, review [Chapter 3, “Taking the first steps after you install IBM Spectrum Protect,”](#) on page 77 to learn about configuring your server.

Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using console mode

You can install IBM Spectrum Protect by using the command line in console mode.

Before you begin

Take the following actions before you start the installation:

- Verify that the operating system is set to the language that you require. By default, the language of the operating system is the language of the installation wizard.

Procedure

Install IBM Spectrum Protect by using this method:

| Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Installing the software from a downloaded package: | <p>a. Change to the directory where you downloaded the package.</p> <p>b. Start the installation wizard in console mode by issuing the following command:</p> <pre>./install.sh -c</pre> <p>Optional: Generate a response file as part of a console mode installation. Complete the console mode installation options, and in the Summary panel, specify G to generate the responses.</p> |

What to do next

- If errors occur during the installation process, the errors are recorded in log files that are stored in the IBM Installation Manager logs directory, for example:
`/var/ibm/InstallationManager/logs`
- After you install the server and components, and before you customize it for your use, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#). Click **Downloads (fixes and PTfs)** and apply any applicable fixes.
- After you install a new server, review Chapter 3, “Taking the first steps after you install IBM Spectrum Protect,” on page 77 to learn about configuring your server.

Installing IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode

You can install or upgrade the server in silent mode. In silent mode, the installation does not send messages to a console but instead stores messages and errors in log files.

Before you begin

To provide data input when you use the silent installation method, you can use a response file. The following sample response files are provided in the `input` directory where the installation package is extracted:

install_response_sample.xml

Use this file to install the IBM Spectrum Protect components.

update_response_sample.xml

Use this file to upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect components.

These files contain default values that can help you avoid any unnecessary warnings. To use these files, follow the instructions that are provided in the files.

If you want to customize a response file, you can modify the options that are in the file. For information about response files, see [Response files](#).

Procedure

1. Create a response file.

You can modify the sample response file or create your own file.

2. If you install the server and Operations Center in silent mode, create a password for the Operations Center truststore in the response file.

If you are using the `install_response_sample.xml` file, add the password in the following line of the file, where *mypassword* represents the password:

```
<variable name='ssl.password' value='mypassword' />
```

For more information about this password, see [Installation checklist](#)

Tip: To upgrade the Operations Center, the truststore password is not required if you are using the `update_response_sample.xml` file.

3. Start the silent installation by issuing the following command from the directory where the installation package is extracted. The value *response_file* represents the response file path and file name:

- ```
./install.sh -s -input response_file -acceptLicense
```

### What to do next

- If errors occur during the installation process, the errors are recorded in log files that are stored in the IBM Installation Manager logs directory, for example:

```
/var/ibm/InstallationManager/logs
```

- After you install the server and components, and before you customize it for your use, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#). Click **Downloads (fixes and PTFs)** and apply any applicable fixes.
- After you install a new server, review [Chapter 3, “Taking the first steps after you install IBM Spectrum Protect,”](#) on page 77 to learn about configuring your server.

## Installing server language packages

Translations for the server allow the server to display messages and help in languages other than US English. The translations also allow for the use of locale conventions for date, time, and number formatting.

### Before you begin

For instructions on installing storage agent language packages, see [Language pack configuration for storage agents](#).

### Server language locales

Use either the default language package option or select another language package to display server messages and help.

This language package is automatically installed for the following default language option for IBM Spectrum Protect server messages and help:

- LANGUAGE en\_US

For languages or locales other than the default, install the language package that your installation requires.

You can use the languages that are shown:

Table 19. Server languages for Linux

| LANGUAGE               | LANGUAGE option value |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Chinese, Simplified    | zh_CN                 |
|                        | zh_CN.gb18030         |
|                        | zh_CN.utf8            |
| Chinese, Traditional   | Big5 / Zh_TW          |
|                        | zh_TW                 |
|                        | zh_TW.utf8            |
| English, United States | en_US                 |
|                        | en_US.utf8            |
| French                 | fr_FR                 |
|                        | fr_FR.utf8            |
| German                 | de_DE                 |
|                        | de_DE.utf8            |
| Italian                | it_IT                 |
|                        | it_IT.utf8            |
| Japanese               | ja_JP                 |
|                        | ja_JP.utf8            |
| Korean                 | ko_KR                 |
|                        | ko_KR.utf8            |
| Portuguese, Brazilian  | pt_BR                 |
|                        | pt_BR.utf8            |
| Russian                | ru_RU                 |
|                        | ru_RU.utf8            |
| Spanish                | es_ES                 |
|                        | es_ES.utf8            |

**Restriction:** For Operations Center users, some characters might not be displayed properly if the web browser does not use the same language as the server. If this problem occurs, set the browser to use the same language as the server.

## Configuring a language package

After you configure a language package, messages and help are shown on the server in languages other than US English. Installation packages are provided with IBM Spectrum Protect.

### About this task

To set support for a certain locale, complete one of the following tasks:

- Set the LANGUAGE option in the server options file to the name of the locale that you want to use. For example:

To use the `it_IT` locale, set the `LANGUAGE` option to `it_IT`. See [“Server language locales” on page 74](#).

- If you are starting the server in the foreground, set the `LC_ALL` environment variable to match the value that is set in the server options file. For example, to set the environment variable for Italian, enter the following value:

```
export LC_ALL=it_IT
```

If the locale is successfully initialized, it formats the date, time, and number for the server. If the locale is not successfully initialized, the server uses the US English message files and the date, time, and number format.

## Updating a language package

You can modify or update a language package by using the IBM Installation Manager.

### About this task

You can install another language package within the same IBM Spectrum Protect instance.

- Use the **Modify** function of IBM Installation Manager to install another language package.
- Use the **Update** function of IBM Installation Manager to update to newer versions of the language packages.

**Tip:** In IBM Installation Manager, the term *update* means to discover and install updates and fixes to installed software packages. In this context, *update* and *upgrade* are synonymous.

## Chapter 3. Taking the first steps after you install IBM Spectrum Protect

After you install IBM Spectrum Protect, prepare for the configuration. Using the configuration wizard is the preferred method of configuring the IBM Spectrum Protect instance.

### About this task

1. Update the kernel parameter values. See [Tuning kernel parameters for Linux systems](#).
2. Create the directories and user ID for the server instance. See [“Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance” on page 78](#).
3. Configure a server instance. Select one of the following options:
  - Use the configuration wizard, the preferred method. See [“Configuring IBM Spectrum Protect by using the configuration wizard” on page 80](#).
  - Manually configure the new instance. See [“Configuring the server instance manually” on page 81](#). Complete the following steps during a manual configuration.
    - a. Set up your directories and create the IBM Spectrum Protect instance. See [“Creating the server instance” on page 81](#).
    - b. Create a new server options file by copying the sample file to set up communications between the server and clients. See [“Configuring server and client communications” on page 82](#).
    - c. Issue the **DSMSERV FORMAT** command to format the database. See [“Formatting the database and log” on page 84](#).
    - d. Configure your system for database backup. See [“Preparing the database manager for database backup” on page 86](#).
4. Configure options to control when database reorganization runs. See [“Configuring server options for server database maintenance” on page 88](#).
5. Start the server instance if it is not already started.
 

See [“Starting the server instance” on page 89](#).
6. Register your license. See [“Registering licenses” on page 94](#).
7. Prepare your system for database backups. See [“Preparing the server for database backup operations” on page 94](#).
8. Monitor the server. See [“Monitoring the server” on page 95](#).

## Tuning kernel parameters

For IBM Spectrum Protect and IBM Db2 to install and operate correctly on Linux, you must update the kernel configuration parameters.

### About this task

If you do not update these parameters, the installation of Db2 and IBM Spectrum Protect might fail. Even if installation is successful, operational problems might occur if you do not set parameter values.

## Updating kernel parameters

IBM Db2 automatically increases interprocess communication (IPC) kernel parameter values to the preferred settings.

### About this task

To update the kernel parameters on Linux servers, complete the following steps:

### Procedure

1. Issue the **ipcs -l** command to list the parameter values.
2. Analyze the results to determine whether any changes are required for your system.  
If changes are required, you can set the parameter in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file. The parameter value is applied when the system starts.

### What to do next

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 (RHEL6), you must set the `kernel.shmmax` parameter in the `/etc/sysctl.conf` file before automatically starting the IBM Spectrum Protect server on system startup.

For details about the Db2 database for Linux, see the [Db2 product information](#).

### Suggested settings

Ensure that the values for kernel parameters are sufficient to prevent operational problems from occurring when you run the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

### About this task

The following table contains descriptions of the kernel parameters to run both IBM Spectrum Protect and IBM Db2.

| Kernel parameter optimal settings      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Parameter                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>kernel.randomize_va_space</code> | The <b>kernel.randomize_va_space</b> parameter configures the use of memory ASLR for the kernel. Disable ASLR because it can cause errors for the Db2 software. To learn more details about the Linux ASLR and Db2, see the technote at: <a href="http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21365583">http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21365583</a> . |
| <code>vm.swappiness</code>             | The <b>vm.swappiness</b> parameter defines whether the kernel can swap application memory out of physical random access memory (RAM). For more information about kernel parameters, see the <a href="#">Db2 product information</a> .                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>vm.overcommit_memory</code>      | The <b>vm.overcommit_memory</b> parameter influences how much virtual memory the kernel can permit be allocated. For more information about kernel parameters, see the <a href="#">Db2 product information</a> .                                                                                                                                                       |

## Creating the user ID and directories for the server instance

Create the user ID for the IBM Spectrum Protect server instance and create the directories that the server instance needs for database and recovery logs.

### Before you begin

Review the information about planning space for the server before you complete this task. See [“Worksheets for planning details for the server” on page 51](#).

### Procedure

1. Create the user ID that will own the server instance.  
You use this user ID when you create the server instance in a later step.  
Create a user ID and group that will be the owner of the server instance.



- a. The following commands can be run from an administrative user ID that will set up the user and group. Create the user ID and group in the home directory of the user.

**Restriction:** In the user ID, only lowercase letters (a-z), numerals (0-9), and the underscore character ( \_ ) can be used. The user ID and group name must comply with the following rules:

- The length must be 8 characters or less.
- The user ID and group name cannot start with *ibm*, *sql*, *sys*, or a numeral.
- The user ID and group name cannot be *user*, *admin*, *guest*, *public*, *local*, or any SQL reserved word.

For example, create user ID `tsminst1` in group `tsmsrvs`. The following examples show how to create this user ID and group using operating system commands.

```
groupadd tsmsrvs -g 1111
useradd -d /home/tsminst1 -u 2222 -g 1111 -s /bin/bash tsminst1
passwd tsminst1
```

**Restriction:** IBM Db2 does not support direct operating system user authentication through LDAP.

- b. Log off, then log in to your system. Change to the user account that you just created. Use an interactive login program, such as `telnet`, so that you are prompted for the password and can change it if necessary.

## 2. Create directories that the server requires.

Create empty directories for each item in the table and ensure that the directories are owned by the new user ID you just created. Mount the associated storage to each directory for the active log, archive log, and database directories.

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                       | Example commands for creating the directories                                                                                | Your directories |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| The <i>instance directory</i> for the server, which is a directory that will contain files specifically for this server instance (the server options file and other server-specific files) | <code>mkdir /tsminst1</code>                                                                                                 |                  |
| The database directories                                                                                                                                                                   | <code>mkdir /tsmdb001</code><br><code>mkdir /tsmdb002</code><br><code>mkdir /tsmdb003</code><br><code>mkdir /tsmdb004</code> |                  |
| Active log directory                                                                                                                                                                       | <code>mkdir /tsmlog</code>                                                                                                   |                  |
| Archive log directory                                                                                                                                                                      | <code>mkdir /tsmarchlog</code>                                                                                               |                  |
| Optional: Directory for the log mirror for the active log                                                                                                                                  | <code>mkdir /tsmlogmirror</code>                                                                                             |                  |
| Optional: Secondary archive log directory (failover location for archive log)                                                                                                              | <code>mkdir /tsmarchlogfailover</code>                                                                                       |                  |

When a server is initially created by using the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility or the configuration wizard, a server database and recovery log are created. In addition, files are created to hold database information that is used by the database manager.

3. Log off the new user ID.

## Configuring the IBM Spectrum Protect server

After you have installed the server and prepared for the configuration, configure the server instance.

### About this task

Configure an IBM Spectrum Protect server instance by selecting one of the following options:

- Use the IBM Spectrum Protect configuration wizard on your local system. See [“Configuring IBM Spectrum Protect by using the configuration wizard”](#) on page 80.
- Manually configure the new IBM Spectrum Protect instance. See [“Configuring the server instance manually”](#) on page 81. Complete the following steps during a manual configuration.
  1. Set up the directories and create the IBM Spectrum Protect instance. See [“Creating the server instance”](#) on page 81.
  2. Create a new server options file by copying the sample file in order to set up communications between the IBM Spectrum Protect server and clients. See [“Configuring server and client communications”](#) on page 82 .
  3. Issue the DSMSERV FORMAT command to format the database. See [“Formatting the database and log”](#) on page 84.
  4. Configure your system for database backup. See [“Preparing the database manager for database backup”](#) on page 86.

## Configuring IBM Spectrum Protect by using the configuration wizard

The wizard offers a guided approach to configuring a server. By using the graphical user interface (GUI), you can avoid some configuration steps that are complex when done manually. Start the wizard on the system where you installed the IBM Spectrum Protect server program.

### Before you begin

Before you use the configuration wizard, you must complete all preceding steps to prepare for the configuration. These steps include installing IBM Spectrum Protect, creating the database and log directories, and creating the directories and user ID for the server instance.

### Procedure

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met:
  - The system where you installed IBM Spectrum Protect must have the X Window System client. You must also be running an X Window System server on your desktop.
  - The system must have the Secure Shell (SSH) protocol enabled. Ensure that the port is set to the default value, 22, and that the port is not blocked by a firewall. You must enable password authentication in the `sshd_config` file in the `/etc/ssh/` directory. Also, ensure that the SSH daemon service has access rights for connecting to the system by using the `localhost` value.
  - You must be able to log in to the system with the user ID that you created for the server instance, by using the SSH protocol. When you use the wizard, you must provide this user ID and password to access that system.
2. Start the local version of the wizard:

Open the `dsmicfgx` program in the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin` directory. This wizard can be run only by using the root user ID.

Follow the instructions to complete the configuration. The wizard can be stopped and restarted, but the server is not operational until the entire configuration process is complete.

## Configuring the server instance manually

After installing IBM Spectrum Protect, you can configure IBM Spectrum Protect manually instead of using the configuration wizard.

### Creating the server instance

Create an IBM Spectrum Protect instance by issuing the **db2icrt** command.

### About this task

You can have one or more server instances on one workstation.

**Important:** Before you run the **db2icrt** command, verify the following items:

- The home directory for the user (/home/tsminst1) exists. If there is no home directory, you must create it.

The instance directory stores the following files that are generated by the IBM Spectrum Protect server:

- The server options file, dsmserve.opt
  - The server key database file, cert.kdb, and the .arm files (used by clients and other servers to import the Secure Sockets Layer certificates of the server)
  - Device configuration file, if the DEVCONFIG server option does not specify a fully qualified name
  - Volume history file, if the VOLUMEHISTORY server option does not specify a fully qualified name
  - Volumes for **DEVTYPE=FILE** storage pools, if the directory for the device class is not fully specified, or not fully qualified
  - User exits
  - Trace output (if not fully qualified)
- A backup copy of the following files must be saved to a safe and secure location:
    - Master encryption key files (dsmkeydb.\*)
    - Server certificate and private key files (cert.\*)
  - The root user and instance-user ID must have write permission to the shell configuration file. A shell configuration file (for example, .profile) exists in the home directory. For more information, see the [Db2 product information](#). Search for Linux and UNIX environment variable settings.
1. Log in using the root user ID and create an IBM Spectrum Protect instance. The name of the instance must be the same name as the user that owns the instance. Use the **db2icrt** command and enter the command on one line:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -u
instance_name instance_name
```

For example, if your user ID for this instance is tsminst1, use the following command to create the instance. Enter the command on one line.

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2icrt -a server -u
tsminst1 tsminst1
```

**Remember:** From this point on, use this new user ID when you configure your IBM Spectrum Protect server. Log out of the root user ID and log in under the new instance-user ID.

2. Change the default directory for the database to be the same as the instance directory for the server. If you have multiple servers, log in under the instance ID for each server. Issue this command:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_directory
```

For example, where instance\_directory is the instance user ID:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath /tsminst1
```

3. Modify the library path to include libraries that are required for server operations.

**Tip:** In the following examples, here are the directories:

- *server\_bin\_directory* is a subdirectory of the server installation directory. For example, /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin.
- *instance\_users\_home\_directory* is the home directory of the instance user. For example, /home/tsminst1.
- .
- You must update one of the following files to set the library path when IBM Db2 or the server are started. Update per the shell that the instance user is configured to use.

Bash or Korn shell:

```
instance_users_home_directory/sqllib/userprofile
```

C shell:

```
instance_users_home_directory/sqllib/usercshrc
```

- Update per the shell that the instance user is configured to use.

Bash or Korn shell:

Add the following entry to the *instance\_users\_home\_directory*/sqllib/userprofile file, on one line:

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=server_bin_directory/
dbbkapi:/usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:
/opt/ibm/lib:
/opt/ibm/lib64:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

C shell:

Add the following entry to the *instance\_users\_home\_directory*/sqllib/usercshrc file, on one line:

```
setenv LD_LIBRARY_PATH server_bin_directory/dbbkapi:
usr/local/ibm/gsk8_64/lib64:
opt/ibm/lib:/opt/ibm/lib64:/usr/lib64:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

**Remember:** The following entries must be in the library path, preceding any other entries in the library path:

- server\_bin\_directory/dbbkapi
- /usr/local/ibm/gsk8\_64/lib64

4. Create a new server options file.

### Configuring server and client communications

A default sample server options file, *dsmserv.opt.smp*, is created during IBM Spectrum Protect installation in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin directory. You must set up communications between the server and clients by creating a new server options file. To do so, copy the sample file to the directory for the server instance.

### About this task

Ensure that you have a server instance directory, for example /tsminst1, and copy the sample file to this directory. Name the new file *dsmserv.opt* and edit the options. Complete this set-up before you initialize the server database. Each sample or default entry in the sample options file is a comment, a line beginning with an asterisk (\*). Options are not case-sensitive and one or more blank spaces are allowed between keywords and values.

When editing the options file, follow these guidelines:

- Remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line to activate an option.
- Begin entering the options in any column.
- Enter only one option per line, and the option must be on only one line.
- If you make multiple entries for a keyword, the IBM Spectrum Protect server uses the last entry.

If you change the server options file, you must restart the server for the changes to take effect.

You can specify one or more of the following communication methods:

- TCP/IP Version 4 or Version 6
- Shared memory
- Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)

**Tip:** You can authenticate passwords with the LDAP directory server, or authenticate passwords with the IBM Spectrum Protect server. Passwords that are authenticated with the LDAP directory server can provide enhanced system security.

### Setting TCP/IP options

Select from a range of TCP/IP options for the IBM Spectrum Protect server or retain the default.

### About this task

The following is an example of a list of TCP/IP options that you can use to set up your system.

```
commethod tcpip
tcpport 1500
tcpwindowsize 0
tcpnodelay yes
```

**Tip:** You can use TCP/IP Version 4, Version 6, or both.

### TCPPORT

The server port address for TCP/IP and SSL communication. The default value is 1500.

### TCPWINDOWSIZE

Specifies the size of the TCP/IP buffer that is used when sending or receiving data. The window size that is used in a session is the smaller of the server and client window sizes. Larger window sizes use additional memory but can improve performance.

You can specify an integer from 0 to 2048. To use the default window size for the operating system, specify 0.

### TCPNODELAY

Specifies whether or not the server sends small messages or lets TCP/IP buffer the messages.

Sending small messages can improve throughput but increases the number of packets sent over the network. Specify YES to send small messages or NO to let TCP/IP buffer them. The default is YES.

### TCPADMINPORT

Specifies the port number on which the server TCP/IP communication driver is to wait for TCP/IP or SSL-enabled communication requests other than client sessions. The default is the value of TCPPOINT.

### SSLTCPPOINT

(SSL-only) Specifies the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) port number on which the server TCP/IP communication driver waits for requests for SSL-enabled sessions for the command-line backup-archive client and the command-line administrative client.

### SSLTCPADMINPORT

(SSL-only) Specifies the port address on which the server TCP/IP communication driver waits for requests for SSL-enabled sessions for the command-line administrative client.

### Setting shared memory options

You can use shared memory communications between clients and servers on the same system. To use shared memory, TCP/IP Version 4 must be installed on the system.

#### About this task

The following example shows a shared memory setting:

```
commethod sharedmem
shmport 1510
```

In this example, **SHMPORT** specifies the TCP/IP port address of a server when using shared memory. Use the **SHMPORT** option to specify a different TCP/IP port. The default port address is 1510.

**COMMETHOD** can be used multiple times in the IBM Spectrum Protect server options file, with a different value each time. For example, the following example is possible:

```
commethod tcpip
commethod sharedmem
```

You might receive the following message from the server when using shared memory:

```
ANR9999D shmcomm.c(1598): ThreadId<39>
Error from msgget (2), errno = 28
```

The message means that a message queue must be created but the system limit for the maximum number of message queues (**MSGMNI**) would be exceeded.

To find out the maximum number of message queues (**MSGMNI**) on your system, issue the following command:

```
cat /proc/sys/kernel/msgmni
```

To increase the **MSGMNI** value on your system, issue the following command:

```
sysctl -w kernel.msgmni=n
```

where **n** is the maximum number of message queues that you want the system to allow.

### Setting Secure Sockets Layer options

You can add more protection for your data and passwords by using Secure Sockets Layer (SSL).

#### Before you begin

SSL is the standard technology for creating encrypted sessions between servers and clients. SSL provides a secure channel for servers and clients to communicate over open communication paths. With SSL, the identity of the server is verified through the use of digital certificates.

To ensure better system performance, use SSL only for sessions when it is needed. Consider adding additional processor resources on the IBM Spectrum Protect server to manage the increased requirements.

#### Formatting the database and log

If you configure the server manually, you must format the server database and recovery log. The database is used to store information about client data and server operations and the recovery log can be used to recover from system and media failures. Use the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility to format and initialize the server database and recovery log. No other server activity is allowed while you initialize the database and recovery log.

After you set up server communications, you are ready to initialize the database. Do not place the directories on file systems that might run out of space. If certain directories, such as the archive log, are no longer available or full, the server stops. See [Capacity planning](#) for more details.

### Setting the exit list handler

Set the **DB2NOEXITLIST** registry variable to ON for each server instance. Log on to the system by using the instance user ID and run the following command:

```
db2set -i server_instance_name DB2NOEXITLIST=ON
```

For example:

```
db2set -i tsminst1 DB2NOEXITLIST=ON
```

### Initializing the server database and recovery log

Use the **DSMSERV FORMAT** utility to format and initialize the server database, which is an IBM Db2 database, and the recovery log. For example, if the server instance directory is */tsminst1*, run the following commands:

```
cd /tsminst1
dsmserv format dbdir=/tsmdb001 activelogsiz=32768
activelogdirectory=/activelog archlogdirectory=/archlog
archfailoverlogdirectory=/archfaillog mirrorlogdirectory=/mirrorlog
```

**Tip:** If you specify multiple directories, ensure that the underlying file systems are of equal size to ensure a consistent degree of parallelism for database operations. If one or more directories for the database are smaller than the others, they reduce the potential for optimized parallel prefetching and distribution of the database.

If the Db2 database does not start after you run the **DSMSERV FORMAT** command, you might have to disable the file system mount option NOSUID. You must disable the option to start the system in the following circumstances:

- If the option is set on the file system that contains the Db2 instance owner directory.
- If the option is set on any file system that contains the Db2 database, active logs, archive logs, failover logs, or mirrored logs.

After you disable the NOSUID option, remount the file system and then start the Db2 database by running the following command:

```
db2start
```

### Creating an administrative user

After the formatting of the database and recovery log is completed, you must create an administrative user who can log in to the server and also enable the IBM Spectrum Protect Operations Center to connect to the server. You use the following commands in a macro to set up an administrative user:

#### REGISTER ADMIN

The **REGISTER ADMIN** command takes the following parameters:

```
register admin administrator_user_id administrator_user_password
```

The password must meet specific length rules. For more information, see [REGISTER ADMIN \(Register an administrator ID\)](#)

#### GRANT AUTH

The **GRANT AUTH** command takes the following parameters:

```
grant auth administrator_user_id classes=administrator_user_class
```

For more information, see [GRANT AUTHORITY \(Add administrator authority\)](#).

Complete the following steps to set up an administrative user:

1. Create a macro, for example, *setup.mac*.

2. Edit the macro to register an administrative user and grant system authority to the user, with the following credentials:

- Administrative user ID: adminadmin
- Password for the administrative user: adminadmin1

```
register admin adminadmin adminadmin1
grant auth adminadmin classes=system
```

You must create the administrative user with the **classes=system** option so that the administrative user can create other potential administrative users, for example, with limited privileges. Any of these administrative users can then connect to the IBM Spectrum Protect Operations Center.

3. To create the administrative user and grant system authority to this user, run the **DSMSERV** command with the **runfile** option and the macro file, for example:

```
dsmserv runfile setup.mac
```

The administrative user can then start the server instance and connect to the server to complete other required steps, such as setting up the database backup.

### Preparing the database manager for database backup

To back up the data in the database to IBM Spectrum Protect, you must enable the database manager and configure the IBM Spectrum Protect application programming interface (API).

### About this task

Starting with IBM Spectrum Protect V7.1, it is no longer necessary to set the API password during a manual configuration of the server. If you set the API password during the manual configuration process, attempts to back up the database might fail.

If you use the configuration wizard to create an IBM Spectrum Protect server instance, you do not have to complete these steps. If you are configuring an instance manually, complete the following steps before you issue either the **BACKUP DB** or the **RESTORE DB** commands.



**Attention:** If the database is unusable, the entire IBM Spectrum Protect server is unavailable. If a database is lost and cannot be recovered, it might be difficult or impossible to recover data that is managed by that server. Therefore, it is critically important to back up the database.

In the following commands, replace the example values with your actual values. The examples use `tsminst1` for the server instance user ID, `/tsminst1` for the server instance directory, and `/home/tsminst1` as the server instance users home directory.

1. Set the IBM Spectrum Protect API environment-variable configuration for the database instance:

- a. Log in by using the `tsminst1` user ID.
- b. When user `tsminst1` is logged in, ensure that the IBM Db2 environment is properly initialized. The Db2 environment is initialized by running the `/home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile` script, which normally runs automatically from the profile of the user ID. Ensure the `.profile` file exists in the instance users home directory, for example, `/home/tsminst1/.profile`. If `.profile` does not run the `db2profile` script, add the following lines:

```
if [-f /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile]; then
 . /home/tsminst1/sqllib/db2profile
fi
```

- c. In the `instance_directory/sqllib/userprofile` file, add the following lines:

```
DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory
export DSMI_CONFIG DSMI_DIR DSMI_LOG
```

where:



- *instance\_directory* is the home directory of the server instance user.
- *server\_instance\_directory* is the server instance directory.
- *server\_bin\_directory* is the server bin directory. The default location is `/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin`.

In the *instance\_directory*/sqlllib/usercshrc file, add the following lines:

```
setenv DSMI_CONFIG=server_instance_directory/tsmdbmgr.opt
setenv DSMI_DIR=server_bin_directory/dbbkapi
setenv DSMI_LOG=server_instance_directory
```

2. Log off and log in again as `tsminst1`, or issue this command:

```
. ~/.profile
```

**Tip:** Ensure that you enter a space after the initial dot (.) character.

3. Create a file that is named `tsmdbmgr.opt` in the *server\_instance* directory, which is in the `/tsminst1` directory in this example, and add the following line:

```
SERVERNAME TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
```

**Remember:** The value for `SERVERNAME` must be consistent in the `tsmdbmgr.opt` and `dsm.sys` files.

4. As root user, add the following lines to the IBM Spectrum Protect API `dsm.sys` configuration file. By default, the `dsm.sys` configuration file is in the following default location:

*server\_bin\_directory*/dbbkapi/dsm.sys

```
servername TSMDBMGR_TSMINST1
commethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport 1500
errorlogname /tsminst1/tsmdbmgr.log
nodename $$_TSMDBMGR_$$
```

where

- *servername* matches the `servername` value in the `tsmdbmgr.opt` file.
- *commethod* specifies the client API that is used to contact the server for database backup. This value can be `tcpip` or `sharedmem`. For more information about shared memory, see step 5.
- *tcpserveraddr* specifies the server address that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be `localhost`.

**Important:** If your server is using a CA-signed certificate, you must specify the server's external IP address for the *tcpserveraddr* option.

- *tcpport* specifies the port number that the client API uses to contact the server for database backup. Ensure that you enter the same `tcpport` value that is specified in the `dsmserve.opt` server options file.
- *errorlogname* specifies the error log where the client API logs errors that are encountered during a database backup. This log is typically in the server instance directory. However, this log can be placed in any location where the instance user ID has write-permission.
- *nodename* specifies the node name that the client API uses to connect to the server during a database backup. To ensure that the database can be backed up, this value must be `$_TSMDBMGR_`.



**Attention:** Do not add the `PASSWORDACCESS generate` option to the `dsm.sys` configuration file. This option can cause the database backup to fail.

5. Optional: Configure the server to back up the database by using shared memory. In this way, you might be able to reduce the processor load and improve throughput. Complete the following steps:

- a. Review the `dsmserv.opt` file. If the following lines are not in the file, add them:

```
commethod sharedmem
shmport port_number
```

where *port\_number* specifies the port to be used for shared memory.

- b. In the `dsm.sys` configuration file, locate the following lines:

```
commethod tcpip
tcpserveraddr localhost
tcpport port_number
```

Replace the specified lines with the following lines:

```
commethod sharedmem
shmport port_number
```

where *port\_number* specifies the port to be used for shared memory.

## Configuring server options for server database maintenance

To help avoid problems with database growth and server performance, the server automatically monitors its database tables and reorganizes them when needed. Before starting the server for production use, set server options to control when reorganization runs. If you plan to use data deduplication, ensure that the option to run index reorganization is enabled.

### About this task

Table and index reorganization requires significant processor resources, active log space, and archive log space. Because database backup takes precedence over reorganization, select the time and duration for reorganization to ensure that the processes do not overlap and reorganization can complete.

You can optimize index and table reorganization for the server database. In this way, you can help to avoid unexpected database growth and performance issues. For instructions, see [technote 1683633](#).

If you update these server options while the server is running, you must stop and restart the server before the updated values take effect.

### Procedure

1. Modify the server options.

Edit the server options file, `dsmserv.opt`, in the server instance directory. Follow these guidelines when you edit the server options file:

- To enable an option, remove the asterisk at the beginning of the line.
- Enter an option on any line.
- Enter only one option per line. The entire option with its value must be on one line.
- If you have multiple entries for an option in the file, the server uses the last entry.

To view available server options, see the sample file, `dsmserv.opt.smp`, in the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin` directory.

2. If you plan to use data deduplication, enable the **ALLOWREORGINDEX** server option.

Add the following option and value to the server options file:

```
allowreorgindex yes
```

3. Set the **REORGBEGINTIME** and **REORGDURATION** server options to control when reorganization starts and how long it runs. Select a time and duration so that reorganization runs when you expect that the server is least busy.

These server options control both table and index reorganization processes.

- a) Set the time for reorganization to start by using the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option. Specify the time by using the 24-hour system.  
For example, to set the start time for reorganization as 8:30 p.m., specify the following option and value in the server options file:

```
reorgbetime 20:30
```

- b) Set the interval during which the server can start reorganization.  
For example, to specify that the server can start reorganization for four hours after the time set by the **REORGBEGINTIME** server option, specify the following option and value in the server options file:

```
reorgduration 4
```

4. If the server was running while you updated the server options file, stop and restart the server.

## Starting the server instance

You can start the server by using the instance user ID, which is the preferred method, or the root user ID.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you set access permissions and user limits correctly.

### About this task

When you start the server by using the instance user ID, you simplify the setup process and avoid potential issues. However, in some cases, it might be necessary to start the server with the root user ID. For example, you might want to use the root user ID to ensure that the server can access specific devices. You can set up the server to start automatically by using either the instance user ID or the root user ID.

If you must complete maintenance or reconfiguration tasks, start the server in maintenance mode.

### Procedure

To start the server, take one of the following actions:

- Start the server by using the instance user ID.

For instructions, see [“Starting the server from the instance user ID” on page 91](#).

- Start the server by using the root user ID.

For instructions about authorizing root user IDs to start the server, see [Authorizing root user IDs to start the server \(V7.1.1\)](#). For instructions about starting the server by using the root user ID, see [Starting the server from the root user ID \(V7.1.1\)](#).

- Start the server automatically.

For instructions, see [“Automatically starting servers on Linux systems” on page 91](#).

- Start the server in maintenance mode.

For instructions, see [“Starting the server in maintenance mode” on page 93](#).

## Verifying access rights and user limits

Before you start the server, verify access rights and user limits.

### About this task

If you do not verify user limits, also known as *ulimits*, you might experience server instability or a failure of the server to respond. You must also verify the system-wide limit for the maximum number of open files. The system-wide limit must be greater than or equal to the user limit.

**Procedure**

1. Verify that the server instance user ID has permissions to start the server.
2. For the server instance that you plan to start, ensure that you have authority to read and write files in the server instance directory.  
Verify that the `dsmseiv.opt` file exists in the server instance directory, and that the file includes parameters for the server instance.
3. If the server is attached to a tape drive, medium changer, or removable media device, and you plan to start the server by using the instance user ID, grant read/write access to the instance user ID for these devices. To set permissions, take one of the following actions:

- If the system is dedicated to IBM Spectrum Protect and only the IBM Spectrum Protect administrator has access, make the device special file world-writable. On the operating system command line, issue the following command:

```
chmod +w /dev/mtX
```

- If the system has multiple users, you can restrict access by making the IBM Spectrum Protect instance user ID the owner of the special device files. On the operating system command line, issue the following command:

```
chmod u+w /dev/mtX
```

- If multiple user instances are running on the same system, change the group name, for example TAPEUSERS, and add each IBM Spectrum Protect instance user ID to that group. Then, change the ownership of the device special files to belong to the group TAPEUSERS, and make them group-writable. On the operating system command line, issue the following command:

```
chmod g+w /dev/mtX
```

4. If you are using the IBM Spectrum Protect device driver and the **autoconf** utility, use the **-a** option to grant read/write access to the instance user ID.
5. To prevent server failures during interaction with IBM Db2, tune the kernel parameters.  
For instructions about tuning kernel parameters, see [Tuning kernel parameters](#).
6. Verify the following user limits based on the guidelines in the table.

| <i>Table 20. User limit (ulimit) values</i>  |                 |                         |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| User limit type                              | Preferred value | Command to query value  |
| Maximum size of core files created           | Unlimited       | <code>ulimit -Hc</code> |
| Maximum size of a data segment for a process | Unlimited       | <code>ulimit -Hd</code> |
| Maximum file size                            | Unlimited       | <code>ulimit -Hf</code> |
| Maximum number of open files                 | 65536           | <code>ulimit -Hn</code> |
| Maximum amount of processor time in seconds  | Unlimited       | <code>ulimit -Ht</code> |

To modify user limits, follow the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

**Tip:** If you plan to start the server automatically by using a script, you can set the user limits in the script.

7. Ensure that the user limit of maximum user processes (the `nproc` setting) is set to the minimum suggested value of 16384.
  - a) To verify the current user limit, issue the `ulimit -Hu` command by using the instance user ID.  
For example:

```
[user@Machine ~]$ ulimit -Hu
16384
```

- b) If the limit of maximum user processes is not set to 16384, set the value to 16384.

Add the following line to the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file:

```
instance_user_id - nproc 16384
```

where `instance_user_id` specifies the server instance user ID.

If the server is installed on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 operating system, set the user limit by editing the `/etc/security/limits.d/90-nproc.conf` file in the `/etc/security/limits.d` directory. This file overrides the settings in the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file.

**Tip:** The default value for the user limit of maximum user processes has changed on some distributions and versions of the Linux operating system. The default value is 1024. If you do not change the value to the minimum suggested value of 16384, the server might fail or hang.

## Starting the server from the instance user ID

To start the server from the instance user ID, log in with the instance user ID and issue the appropriate command from the server instance directory.

### Before you begin

Ensure that access rights and user limits are set correctly.

### Procedure

1. Log in to the system where IBM Spectrum Protect is installed by using the instance user ID for the server.
2. If you do not have a user profile that runs the `db2profile` script, issue the following command:

```
. /home/tsminst1/sqlllib/db2profile
```

**Tip:** For instructions about updating the user ID login script to run the `db2profile` script automatically, see the [Db2 product information](#).

3. Start the server by issuing the following command on one line from the server instance directory:

```
usr/bin/dsmserve
```

**Tip:** The command runs in the foreground so that you can set an administrator ID and connect to the server instance.

For example, if the name of the server instance is `tsminst1` and the server instance directory is `/tsminst1`, you can start the instance by issuing the following commands:

```
cd /tsminst1
. ~/sqlllib/db2profile
/usr/bin/dsmserve
```

## Automatically starting servers on Linux systems

To automatically start a server on a Linux operating system, use the `dsmserve.rc` script.

### Before you begin

Ensure that kernel parameters are set correctly.

Ensure that the server instance runs under the instance owner user ID.

Ensure that access rights and user limits are set correctly.

### About this task

The **dsmserv.rc** script is in the server installation directory, for example, `/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin`.

The **dsmserv.rc** script can be used either to start the server manually or to start the server automatically by adding entries to the `/etc/rc.d/init.d` directory. The script works with Linux utilities such as **CHKCONFIG** and **SERVICE**.

### Procedure

For each server instance that you want to automatically start, complete the following steps:

1. Place a copy of the **dsmserv.rc** script in the `/init.d` directory, for example, `/etc/rc.d/init.d`.

Ensure that you change only the copy of the script. Do not change the original script.

2. Rename the script copy so that it matches the name of the server instance owner, for example, `tsminst1`.

The script was created under the assumption that the server instance directory is *home\_directory*/`tsminst1`, for example: `/home/tsminst1/tsminst1`.

3. If the server instance directory is not *home\_directory*/`tsminst1`, locate the following line in the script copy:

```
instance_dir="${instance_home}/tsminst1"
```

Change the line so that it points to your server instance directory, for example:

```
instance_dir="/tsminst1"
```

4. In the script copy, locate the following line:

```
pidfile: /var/run/dsmserv_instancename_su.pid
```

Change the instance name value to the name of the server instance owner.

For example, if the server instance owner is `tsminst1`, update the line as shown:

```
pidfile: /var/run/dsmserv_tsminst1_su.pid
```

5. Configure the run level in which the server automatically starts. By using tools such as the **CHKCONFIG** utility, specify a value that corresponds to a multiuser mode, with networking turned on. Typically, the run level to use is 3 or 5, depending on the operating system and its configuration. For more information about multiuser mode and run levels, see the documentation for your operating system.
6. To start or stop the server, issue one of the following commands:

- To start the server:

```
service tsminst1 start
```

- To stop the server:

```
service tsminst1 stop
```

### Example

This example uses the following values:

- The instance owner is `tsminst1`.
- The server instance directory is `/home/tsminst1/tsminst1`.
- The **dsmserv.rc** script copy is named `tsminst1`.
- The **CHKCONFIG** utility is used to configure the script to start at run levels 3, 4, and 5.

```
cp /opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dsmserv.rc /etc/rc.d/init.d/tsminst1
sed -i 's/dsmserv_instancename.pid/dsmserv_tsminst1.pid/' /etc/rc.d/init.d/tsminst1
```

```
chkconfig --list tsminst1
service tsminst1 supports chkconfig, but is not referenced in
any runlevel (run 'chkconfig --add tsminst1')
chkconfig --add tsminst1
chkconfig --list tsminst1
tsminst1 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:off 4:off 5:off 6:off
chkconfig --level 345 tsminst1 on
chkconfig --list tsminst1
tsminst1 0:off 1:off 2:off 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
```

## Starting the server in maintenance mode

You can start the server in maintenance mode to avoid disruptions during maintenance and reconfiguration tasks.

### About this task

Start the server in maintenance mode by running the **DSMSERV** utility with the **MAINTENANCE** parameter.

The following operations are disabled in maintenance mode:

- Administrative command schedules
- Client schedules
- Reclamation of storage space on the server
- Inventory expiration
- Migration of storage pools

In addition, clients are prevented from starting sessions with the server.

### Tips:

- You do not have to edit the server options file, `dsmserve .opt`, to start the server in maintenance mode.
- While the server is running in maintenance mode, you can manually start the storage-space reclamation, inventory expiration, and storage-pool migration processes.

### Procedure

- To start the server in maintenance mode, issue the following command:

```
dsmserve maintenance
```

**Tip:** To view a video about starting the server in maintenance mode, see [Starting a server in maintenance mode](#).

### What to do next

To resume server operations in production mode, complete the following steps:

1. Shut down the server by issuing the **HALT** command:

```
halt
```

2. Start the server by using the method that you use in production mode.

Operations that were disabled during maintenance mode are reenabled.

### Stopping the server

You can stop the server when needed to return control to the operating system. To avoid losing administrative and client node connections, stop the server only after current sessions are completed or canceled.

#### About this task

To stop the server, issue the following command from the IBM Spectrum Protect command line:

```
halt
```

If you cannot connect to the server with an administrative client and you want to stop the server, you must cancel the process by using the **kill** command with the process ID number (pid). The pid is displayed at initialization.

**Important:** Before you issue the **kill** command, ensure that you know the correct process ID for the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

The `dsmserve.v6lock` file, in the directory from which the server is running, can be used to identify the process ID of the process to kill. To display the file, enter:

```
cat /instance_dir/dsmserve.v6lock
```

Issue the following command to stop the server:

```
kill -23 dsmserve_pid
```

where `dsmserve_pid` is the process ID number.

### Registering licenses

Immediately register any IBM Spectrum Protect licensed functions that you purchase so you do not lose any data after you start server operations, such as backing up your data.

#### About this task

Use the **REGISTER LICENSE** command for this task.

#### Example: Register a license

Register the base IBM Spectrum Protect license.

```
register license file=tsmbasic.lic
```

### Preparing the server for database backup operations

To prepare the server for automatic and manual database backup operations, ensure that you specify a tape, file, or cloud device class and complete other steps.

#### Procedure

1. Ensure that the IBM Spectrum Protect server configuration is complete.

**Tip:** You can configure the server for database backups by using the configuration wizard (`dsmicfgx`) or you can complete the steps manually. For more information about configuration, see the *Configuring servers* section in IBM Knowledge Center.

2. Select the device class to be used for database backups, protect the master encryption key, and set a password.

Ensure that the following key files are protected:



- Master encryption key files (dsmkeydb.\*)
- Server certificate and private key files (cert.\*)

To complete these actions, issue the **SET DBRECOVERY** command from the administrative command line:

```
set dbrecovery device_class_name protectkeys=yes password=password_name
```

where *device\_class\_name* specifies the device class to be used for database backup operations, and *password\_name* specifies the password.

You must specify a device class name or the backup fails. By specifying **PROTECTKEYS=YES**, you ensure that the master encryption key is backed up during database backup operations. Cloud device classes require the **PROTECTKEYS=YES** parameter.

Create a strong password that is at least 8 characters long. If you specify a password for database backup, you must specify the same password on the **RESTORE DB** command to restore the database.



**Attention:** Ensure that you remember the password and keep a copy stored in a secure location. Without the password, data cannot be recovered.

### Example

To specify that database backups include a copy of the master encryption key for the server, run the following command:

```
set dbrecovery dbback protectkeys=yes password=protect8991
```

## Running multiple server instances on a single system

You can create more than one server instance on your system. Each server instance has its own instance directory, and database and log directories.

Multiply the memory and other system requirements for one server by the number of instances planned for the system.

The set of files for one instance of the server is stored separately from the files used by another server instance on the same system. Use the steps in the Creating the server instance section for each new instance, including creation of the new instance user.

To manage the system memory that is used by each server, use the DBMEMPERCENT server option to limit the percentage of system memory. If all servers are equally important, use the same value for each server. If one server is a production server and other servers are test servers, set the value for the production server to a higher value than the test servers.

You can upgrade directly from V7.1 to V8.1. See the upgrade section for more details. When you upgrade and have multiple servers on your system, you must run the installation wizard only once. The installation wizard collects the database and variables information for all of your original server instances.

## Monitoring the server

When you start to use the server in production, monitor the space that is used by the server to ensure that the amount of space is adequate. Adjust the space if needed.

### Procedure

1. Monitor the active log to ensure that the size is correct for the workload that is handled by the server instance.

When the server workload reaches its typical expected level, the space that is used by the active log is 80% - 90% of the space that is available to the active log directory. At that point, you might need to increase the amount of space. Whether you must increase the space depends on the types of

transactions in the server workload. Transaction characteristics affect how the active log space is used.

The following transaction characteristics can affect the space usage in the active log:

- The number and size of files in backup operations
  - Clients such as file servers that back up large numbers of small files can cause large numbers of transactions that are completed quickly. The transactions might use a large amount of space in the active log, but for a short time.
  - Clients such as a mail server or a database server that back up large amounts of data in few transactions can cause small numbers of transactions that take a long time to complete. The transactions might use a small amount of space in the active log, but for a long time.
- Network connection types
  - Backup operations that occur over fast network connections cause transactions that complete more quickly. The transactions use space in the active log for a shorter time.
  - Backup operations that occur over relatively slower connections cause transactions that take a longer time to complete. The transactions use space in the active log for a longer time.

If the server is handling transactions with a wide variety of characteristics, the space that is used for the active log might increase and decrease significantly over time. For such a server, you might need to ensure that the active log typically has a smaller percentage of its space used. The extra space allows the active log to grow for transactions that take a long time to complete.

2. Monitor the archive log to ensure that space is always available.

**Remember:** If the archive log becomes full, and the failover archive log becomes full, the active log can become full, and the server stops. The goal is to make enough space available to the archive log so that it never uses all its available space.

You are likely to notice the following pattern:

- a. Initially, the archive log grows rapidly as typical client-backup operations occur.
- b. Database backups occur regularly, either as scheduled or done manually.
- c. After at least two full database backups occur, log pruning occurs automatically. The space that is used by the archive log decreases when the pruning occurs.
- d. Normal client operations continue, and the archive log grows again.
- e. Database backups occur regularly, and log pruning occurs as often as full database backups occur.

With this pattern, the archive log grows initially, decreases, and then might grow again. Over time, as normal operations continue, the amount of space that is used by the archive log should reach a relatively constant level.

If the archive log continues to grow, consider taking one or both of these actions:

- Add space to the archive log. You might need to move the archive log to a different file system.
  - Increase the frequency of full database backups, so that log pruning occurs more frequently.
3. If you defined a directory for the failover archive log, determine whether any logs get stored in that directory during normal operations. If the failover log space is being used, consider increasing the size of the archive log.

The goal is that the failover archive log is used only under unusual conditions, not in normal operation.

## Chapter 4. Installing an IBM Spectrum Protect server fix pack

IBM Spectrum Protect maintenance updates, which are also referred to as fix packs, bring your server up to the current maintenance level.

### Before you begin

To install a fix pack or interim fix to the server, install the server at the level on which you want to run it. You do not have to start the server installation at the base release level. For example, if you currently have V8.1.1 installed, you can go directly to the latest fix pack for V8.1. You do not have to start with the V8.1.0 installation if a maintenance update is available.

You must have the IBM Spectrum Protect license package installed. The license package is provided with the purchase of a base release. When you download a fix pack or interim fix from Fix Central, install the server license that is available on the Passport Advantage website. To display messages and help in a language other than US English, install the language package of your choice.

If you upgrade the server and then revert the server to an earlier level, you must restore the database to a point in time before the upgrade. During the upgrade process, complete the required steps to ensure that the database can be restored: back up the database, the volume history file, the device configuration file, and the server options file.

If you are using the client management service, ensure that you upgrade it to the same version as the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

Ensure that you retain the installation media from the base release of the installed server. If you installed IBM Spectrum Protect from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

Visit the [IBM Support Portal](#) for the following information:

- A list of the latest maintenance and download fixes. Click **Downloads** and apply any applicable fixes.
- Details about obtaining a base license package. Search for **Downloads > Passport Advantage**.
- Supported platforms and system requirements. Search for **IBM Spectrum Protect supported operating systems**.

Ensure that you upgrade the server before you upgrade backup-archive clients. If you do not upgrade the server first, communication between the server and clients might be interrupted.



**Attention:** Do not alter the Db2 software that is installed with IBM Spectrum Protect installation packages and fix packs. Do not install or upgrade to a different version, release, or fix pack of Db2 software because doing so can damage the database.

### Procedure

To install a fix pack or interim fix, complete the following steps:

1. Back up the database. The preferred method is to use a snapshot backup. A snapshot backup is a full database backup that does not interrupt any scheduled database backups. For example, issue the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass
```

2. Back up the device configuration information. Issue the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
backup devconfig filenames=file_name
```

where *file\_name* specifies the name of the file in which to store device configuration information.

3. Save the volume history file to another directory or rename the file. Issue the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
backup volhistory filenames=file_name
```

where *file\_name* specifies the name of the file in which to store the volume history information.

4. Save a copy of the server options file, typically named `dsmserv.opt`. The file is in the server instance directory.
5. Halt the server before installing a fix pack or interim fix.  
Use the **HALT** command.
6. Ensure that extra space is available in the installation directory.  
The installation of this fix pack might require additional temporary disk space in the installation directory of the server. The amount of additional disk space can be as much as that required for installing a new database as part of an IBM Spectrum Protect installation. The IBM Spectrum Protect installation wizard displays the amount of space that is required for installing the fix pack and the available amount. If the required amount of space is greater than the available amount, the installation stops. If the installation stops, add the required disk space to the file system and restart the installation.
7. Log in as the root user.
8. Obtain the package file for the fix pack or interim fix that you want to install from the [IBM Support Portal](#), [Passport Advantage](#), or [Fix Central](#).
9. Change to the directory where you placed the executable file and complete the following steps.

**Tip:** The files are extracted to the current directory. Ensure that the executable file is in the directory where you want the extracted files to be located.

- a. Change file permissions by entering the following command:

```
chmod a+x 8.x.x.x-IBM-SPSRV-platform.bin
```

where *platform* denotes the architecture that IBM Spectrum Protect is to be installed on.

- b. Issue the following command to extract the installation files:

```
./8.x.x.x-IBM-SPSRV-platform.bin
```

10. Select one of the following ways of installing IBM Spectrum Protect.

**Important:** After a fix pack is installed, it is not necessary to go through the configuration again. You can stop after completing the installation, fix any errors, then restart your servers.

Install the IBM Spectrum Protect software by using one of the following methods:

### Installation wizard

Follow the instructions for your operating system:

[“Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using the installation wizard” on page 72](#)

**Tip:** After you start the wizard, in the **IBM Installation Manager** window, click the **Update** icon; do not click the **Install** or **Modify** icon.

### Command line in console mode

Follow the instructions for your operating system:

[“Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using console mode” on page 73](#)

**Tip:** If you have multiple server instances on your system, run the installation wizard only once. The installation wizard upgrades all server instances.

## Results

Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process.

If you installed the server by using the installation wizard, you can view installation logs by using the IBM Installation Manager tool. Click **File > View Log**. To collect log files, from the IBM Installation Manager tool, click **Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis**.

If you installed the server by using console mode or silent mode, you can view error logs in the IBM Installation Manager log directory, for example:

```
/var/ibm/InstallationManager/logs
```



## Chapter 5. Upgrading to V8.1

To take advantage of new product features and updates, upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

### Before you begin

Review the security updates planning information in [“What you should know about security before you install or upgrade the server”](#) on page 3.

### About this task

To upgrade the server on the same operating system, see the upgrade instructions. For instructions about migrating the server to a different operating system, see [IBM Spectrum Protect Upgrade and Migration Process - Frequently Asked Questions](#).

| Table 21. Upgrade instructions |                              |                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| To upgrade from this version   | To this version              | See this information                                                                            |
| V8.1                           | V8.1 fix pack or interim fix | Chapter 4, <a href="#">“Installing an IBM Spectrum Protect server fix pack,”</a> on page 97     |
| V7.1                           | V8.1                         | <a href="#">“Installing the server and verifying the upgrade”</a> on page 104                   |
| V7.1                           | V8.1 fix pack or interim fix | Chapter 4, <a href="#">“Installing an IBM Spectrum Protect server fix pack,”</a> on page 97     |
| V5.5, V6.2, or V6.3            | V8.1                         | <a href="#">IBM Spectrum Protect Upgrade and Migration Process - Frequently Asked Questions</a> |

An upgrade from V7 to V8.1 takes approximately 20 - 50 minutes. Your environment might produce different results from the results that were obtained in the labs.

For information about upgrades in a clustered environment, see [“Upgrading the server in a clustered environment”](#) on page 107.

To revert to an earlier version of the server after an upgrade or migration, you must have a full database backup and the installation software for the original server. You must also have the following key configuration files:

- Volume history file
- Device configuration file
- Server options file

### Related information

[IBM Spectrum Protect Upgrade and Migration Process - Frequently Asked Questions](#)

## Upgrading to V8.1

You can upgrade the server directly from V7.1 to V8.1. You do not have to uninstall V7.1.

### Before you begin

Ensure that you retain the installation media from the server base release that you are upgrading. If you installed the server components from a DVD, ensure that the DVD is available. If you installed the server

components from a downloaded package, ensure that the downloaded files are available. If the upgrade fails, and the server license module is uninstalled, the installation media from the server base release are required to reinstall the license.

**Tip:** DVDs are no longer available with V8.1 and later.

### Procedure

To upgrade the server to V8.1, complete the following tasks:

1. [“Planning the upgrade” on page 102](#)
2. [“Preparing the system” on page 102](#)
3. [“Installing the server and verifying the upgrade” on page 104](#)

## Planning the upgrade

Before you upgrade the server from V7.1 to V8.1, you must review the relevant planning information, such as system requirements and release notes. Then, select an appropriate day and time to upgrade the system so that you can minimize the impact on production operations.

### About this task

In lab tests, the process of upgrading the server from V7.1 to V8.1 took 14 - 45 minutes. The results that you achieve might differ, depending on your hardware and software environment, and the size of the server database.

### Procedure

1. Review the hardware and software requirements:  
[“Minimum system requirements” on page 40](#)  
For the latest updates related to system requirements, see the IBM Spectrum Protect support website at [technote 1243309](#).
2. For special instructions or specific information for your operating system, review the release notes ([http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSEQVQ\\_8.1.3/srv.common/r\\_relnotes\\_srv.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSEQVQ_8.1.3/srv.common/r_relnotes_srv.html)) and readme files for server components.
3. Review the security updates planning information in [“What you should know about security before you install or upgrade the server” on page 3](#).
4. Select an appropriate day and time to upgrade your system to minimize the impact on production operations. The amount of time that is required to update the system depends on the database size and many other factors. When you start the upgrade process, clients cannot connect to the server until the new software is installed and any required licenses are registered again.
5. If you are upgrading the server from V7 to V8.1, verify that you have the system ID and password for the IBM Db2 instance of the IBM Spectrum Protect server. These credentials are required to upgrade the system.

## Preparing the system

To prepare the system for the upgrade from V7.1 to V8.1, you must gather information about each IBM Db2 instance. Then, back up the server database, save key configuration files, cancel sessions, and stop the server.

### Procedure

1. Log on to the computer where the server is installed.  
Ensure that you are logged on with the instance user ID.
2. Obtain a list of Db2 instances. Issue the following system command:



```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2ilist
```

The output might be similar to the following example:

```
tsminst1
```

Ensure that each instance corresponds to a server that is running on the system.

3. For each Db2 instance, note the default database path, actual database path, database name, database alias, and any Db2 variables that are configured for the instance. Keep the record for future reference. This information is required to restore the V7.1 database.
4. Connect to the server by using an administrative user ID.
5. Back up the database by using the **BACKUP DB** command.

The preferred method is to create a snapshot backup, which is a full database backup that does not interrupt scheduled database backups.

For example, you can create a snapshot backup by issuing the following command:

```
backup db type=dbsnapshot devclass=tapeclass
```

6. Back up the device configuration information to another directory by issuing the following administrative command:

```
backup devconfig filenames=file_name
```

where *file\_name* specifies the name of the file in which to store device configuration information.

**Tip:** If you decide to restore the V7.1 database, this file is required.

7. Back up the volume history file to another directory. Issue the following administrative command:

```
backup volhistory filenames=file_name
```

where *file\_name* specifies the name of the file in which to store the volume history information.

**Tip:** If you decide to restore the V7.1 database, this file is required.

8. Save a copy of the server options file, which is typically named `dsmsevr.opt`. The file is in the server instance directory.
9. Prevent activity on the server by disabling new sessions. Issue the following administrative commands:

```
disable sessions client
disable sessions server
```

10. Verify whether any sessions exist, and notify the users that the server will be stopped. To check for existing sessions, issue the following administrative command:

```
query session
```

11. Cancel sessions by issuing the following administrative command:

```
cancel session all
```

This command cancels all sessions except for your current session.

12. Stop the server by issuing the following administrative command:

```
halt
```

13. Verify that the server is shut down and no processes are running.

Issue the following command:

```
ps -ef | grep dsmsevr
```

14. In the server instance directory of your installation, locate the NODELOCK file and move it to another directory, where you are saving configuration files.

The NODELOCK file contains the previous licensing information for your installation. This licensing information is replaced when the upgrade is complete.

### Installing the server and verifying the upgrade

To complete the process of upgrading the server to V8.1, you must install the V8.1 server. Then, verify that the upgrade was successful by starting the server instance.

#### Before you begin

You must be logged on to the system by using the root user ID.

You can obtain the installation package from an IBM download site.

Set the system user limit for maximum file size to unlimited to ensure that the files can be downloaded correctly.

1. To query the maximum file size value, run the following command:

```
ulimit -Hf
```

2. If the system user limit for maximum file size is not set to unlimited, change the setting to unlimited by completing the instructions in the documentation for your operating system.

#### About this task

By using the IBM Spectrum Protect installation software, you can install the following components:

- Server

**Tip:** The database (IBM Db2), the Global Security Kit (GSKit), and IBM Java Runtime Environment (JRE) are automatically installed when you select the server component.

- Server languages
- License
- Devices
- IBM Spectrum Protect for SAN
- Operations Center

#### Procedure

1. Download the appropriate package file from one of the following websites:
  - Download the server package from [Passport Advantage](#) or Fix Central.
  - For the most recent information, updates, and maintenance fixes, go to the [IBM Support Portal](#).
2. Complete the following steps:
  - a. Verify that you have enough space to store the installation files when they are extracted from the product package. For space requirements, see the download document for your product.
    - IBM Spectrum Protect [technote 588021](#)
    - IBM Spectrum Protect Extended Edition [technote 588023](#)
    - IBM Spectrum Protect for Data Retention [technote 588025](#)
  - b. Download the package file to the directory of your choice. The path must contain no more than 128 characters. Be sure to extract the installation files to an empty directory. Do not extract to a directory that contains previously extracted files, or any other files.

Also, ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.
  - c. If necessary, run the following command to change the file permissions:

```
chmod a+x package_name.bin
```

where *package\_name* is like the following example:

```
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxs390x.bin
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxx86_64.bin
8.1.x.000-IBM-SPSRV-Linuxppc64le.bin
```

In the examples, *8.1.x.000* represents the product release level.

d. Extract the installation files by running the following command:

```
./package_name.bin
```

The package is large. Therefore, the extraction takes some time.

3. Install the IBM Spectrum Protect software by using one of the following methods. Install the IBM Spectrum Protect license during the installation process.

**Tip:** If you have multiple server instances on your system, install the IBM Spectrum Protect software only one time to upgrade all server instances.

#### Installation wizard

To install the server by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager, follow the instructions in [“Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using the installation wizard”](#) on page 72.

Ensure that your system meets the prerequisites for using the installation wizard. Then, complete the installation procedure. In the **IBM Installation Manager** window, click the **Update** or **Modify** icon.

#### Installing the server by using the console mode

To install the server by using the console mode, follow the instructions in [“Installing IBM Spectrum Protect by using console mode”](#) on page 73.

Review the information about installing the server in console mode and then complete the installation procedure.

#### Silent mode

To install the server by using silent mode, follow the instructions in [“Installing IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode”](#) on page 73.

Review the information about installing the server in silent mode and then complete the installation procedure.

After you install the software, you do not have to reconfigure the system.

4. Correct any errors that are detected during the installation process.

If you installed the server by using the installation wizard, you can view installation logs by using the IBM Installation Manager tool. Click **File > View Log**. To collect log files, from the IBM Installation Manager tool, click **Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis**.

If you installed the server by using console mode or silent mode, you can view error logs in the IBM Installation Manager log directory, for example:

```
/var/ibm/InstallationManager/logs
```

5. Go to the [IBM Support Portal](#) to obtain fixes. Click **Fixes, updates, and drivers** and apply any applicable fixes.
6. Verify that the upgrade was successful:
  - a) Start the server instance.
  - b) Monitor the messages that the server issues as it starts. Watch for error and warning messages, and resolve any issues.

- c) Verify that you can connect to the server by using the administrative client. To start an administrative client session, run the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
dsmadmcli
```

- d) To obtain information about the upgraded system, run **QUERY** commands.  
For example, to obtain consolidated information about the system, run the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
query system
```

To obtain information about the database, run the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrative command:

```
query db format=detailed
```

7. Register the licenses for the IBM Spectrum Protect server components that are installed on your system by running the **REGISTER LICENSE** command:

```
register license file=installation_directory/server/bin/component_name.lic
```

where *installation\_directory* specifies the directory in which you installed the component, and *component\_name* specifies the abbreviation for the component.

For example, if you installed the server in the default directory, /opt/tivoli/tsm, run the following command to register the license:

```
register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmbasic.lic
```

For example, if you installed IBM Spectrum Protect Extended Edition in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, run the following command:

```
register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/tsmee.lic
```

For example, if you installed IBM Spectrum Protect for Data Retention in the /opt/tivoli/tsm directory, run the following command:

```
register license file=/opt/tivoli/tsm/server/bin/dataret.lic
```

### Restriction:

You cannot use the IBM Spectrum Protect server to register licenses for the following products:

- IBM Spectrum Protect for Mail
- IBM Spectrum Protect for Databases
- IBM Spectrum Protect for ERP
- IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management

The **REGISTER LICENSE** command does not apply to these licenses. The licensing for these products is done by IBM Spectrum Protect clients.

8. Prepare the server for automatic and manual database backup operations.

For instructions, see [“Preparing the server for database backup operations”](#) on page 94.

9. Optional: To install an extra language package, use the modify function of the IBM Installation Manager.

10. Optional: To upgrade to a newer version of a language package, use the update function of the IBM Installation Manager.

**What to do next**

You can authenticate passwords with the LDAP directory server, or authenticate passwords with the IBM Spectrum Protect server. Passwords that are authenticated with the LDAP directory server can provide enhanced system security.

**Upgrading the server in a clustered environment**

To upgrade a server in a clustered environment, you must complete preparation and installation tasks. The procedures vary, depending on the operating system and release.

**Procedure**

Follow the procedure for your operating system, source release, and target release:

| <i>Table 22. Procedures for upgrading the server in a clustered environment on a Linux operating system</i> |                       |                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Source release</b>                                                                                       | <b>Target release</b> | <b>Procedure</b>                                                                                |
| V6.3 or later                                                                                               | V8.1                  | <a href="#">Upgrading a server that is configured with System Automation for Multiplatforms</a> |

**Upgrading IBM Spectrum Protect in a clustered environment**

To take advantage of new features in IBM Spectrum Protect, you can upgrade the IBM Spectrum Protect server that is installed on a Linux operating system in a clustered environment.

**Procedure**

To upgrade, follow the instructions in the configuring a Linux environment for clustering section.



## Chapter 6. Reference: IBM Db2 commands for IBM Spectrum Protect server databases

Use this list as reference when you are directed to issue Db2 commands by IBM support.

### Purpose

After using the wizards to install and configure IBM Spectrum Protect, you seldom need to issue Db2 commands. A limited set of Db2 commands that you might use or be asked to issue are listed in the table.

This list is supplemental material only and is not a comprehensive list. There is no implication that an IBM Spectrum Protect administrator will use it on a daily or ongoing basis. Samples of some commands are provided. Details of output are not listed.

For a full explanation of the commands described here and of their syntax, see the Db2 product documentation.

| Table 23. Db2 commands     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Command                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Example                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>db2icrt</b>             | Creates Db2 instances in the home directory of the instance owner.<br><br><b>Tip:</b> The IBM Spectrum Protect configuration wizard creates the instance used by the server and database. After a server is installed and configured through the configuration wizard, the <b>db2icrt</b> command is generally not used.<br><br>This utility is in the DB2DIR/instance directory, where DB2DIR represents the installation location where the current version of the Db2 database system is installed. | Manually create an IBM Spectrum Protect instance. Enter the command on one line:<br><br><pre>/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/<br/>db2icrt -a server -u<br/>instance_name instance_name</pre> |
| <b>db2set</b>              | Displays Db2 variables.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | List Db2 variables:<br><br><pre>db2set</pre>                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>CATALOG DATABASE</b>    | Stores database location information in the system database directory. The database can be located either on the local workstation or on a remote database partition server. The server configuration wizard takes care of any catalog needed for using the server database. Run this command manually, after a server is configured and running, only if something in the environment changes or is damaged.                                                                                          | Catalog the database:<br><br><pre>db2 catalog database tsmdb1</pre>                                                                                                                       |
| <b>CONNECT TO DATABASE</b> | Connects to a specified database for command-line interface (CLI) use.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Connect to the IBM Spectrum Protect database from a Db2 CLI:<br><br><pre>db2 connect to tsmdb1</pre>                                                                                      |

Table 23. Db2 commands (continued)

| Command                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Example                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>GET DATABASE CONFIGURATION</b>         | <p>Returns the values of individual entries in a specific database configuration file.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> This command and parameters are set and managed directly by Db2. They are listed here for informational purposes and a means to view the existing settings. Changing these settings might be advised by IBM support or through service bulletins such as APARs or Technical Guidance documents (technotes). Do not change these settings manually. Change them only at the direction of IBM and only through the use of IBM Spectrum Protect server commands or procedures.</p>                                                                                                                | <p>Show the configuration information for a database alias:</p> <pre>db2 get db cfg for tsmdb1</pre> <p>Retrieve information in order to verify settings such as database configuration, log mode, and maintenance.</p> <pre>db2 get db config for tsmdb1 show detail</pre> |
| <b>GET DATABASE MANAGER CONFIGURATION</b> | <p>Returns the values of individual entries in a specific database configuration file.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> This command and parameters are set and managed directly by Db2. They are listed here for informational purposes and a means to view the existing settings. Changing these settings might be advised by IBM support or through service bulletins such as APARs or Technical Guidance documents (technotes). Do not change these settings manually. Change them only at the direction of IBM and only through the use of IBM Spectrum Protect server commands or procedures.</p>                                                                                                                | <p>Retrieve configuration information for the database manager:</p> <pre>db2 get dbm cfg</pre>                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>GET HEALTH SNAPSHOT</b>                | <p>Retrieves the health status information for the database manager and its databases. The information returned represents a snapshot of the health state at the time the command was issued.</p> <p>IBM Spectrum Protect monitors the state of the database using the health snapshot and other mechanisms that are provided by Db2. There might be cases where the health snapshot or other documentation indicates that an item or database resource might be in an alert state. Such a case indicates that action must be considered to remedy the situation.</p> <p>IBM Spectrum Protect monitors the condition and responds appropriately. Not all declared alerts by the Db2 database are acted on.</p> | <p>Receive a report on Db2 health monitor indicators:</p> <pre>db2 get health snapshot for database on tsmdb1</pre>                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>GRANT (Database Authorities)</b>       | <p>Grants authorities that apply to the entire database rather than privileges that apply to specific objects within the database.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Grant access to the user ID itmuser:</p> <pre>db2 GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE TO USER itmuser db2 GRANT CREATETAB ON DATABASE TO USER itmuser</pre>                                                                                                                        |



| Table 23. Db2 commands (continued) |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Command                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Example                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>RUNSTATS</b>                    | <p>Updates statistics about the characteristics of a table and associated indexes or statistical views. These characteristics include number of records, number of pages, and average record length.</p> <p>To see a table, issue this utility after updating or reorganizing the table.</p> <p>A view must be enabled for optimization before its statistics can be used to optimize a query. A view that is enabled for optimization is known as a statistical view. Use the Db2 <b>ALTER VIEW</b> statement to enable a view for optimization. Issue the <b>RUNSTATS</b> utility when changes to underlying tables substantially affect the rows returned by the view.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> The server configures Db2 to run the <b>RUNSTATS</b> command as needed.</p>                                                      | <p>Update statistics on a single table.</p> <pre>db2 runstats on table SCHEMA_NAME.TABLE_NAME with distribution and sampled detailed indexes all</pre> |
| <b>SET SCHEMA</b>                  | <p>Changes the value of the <b>CURRENT SCHEMA</b> special register, in preparation for issuing SQL commands directly through the Db2 CLI.</p> <p><b>Tip:</b> A special register is a storage area that is defined for an application process by the database manager. It is used to store information that can be referenced in SQL statements.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Set the schema for IBM Spectrum Protect:</p> <pre>db2 set schema tsmdb1</pre>                                                                       |
| <b>START DATABASE MANAGER</b>      | <p>Starts the current database manager instance background processes. The server starts and stops the instance and database whenever the server starts and halts.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Allow the server to manage the starting and stopping of the instance and database unless otherwise directed by IBM support.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Start the database manager:</p> <pre>db2start</pre>                                                                                                 |
| <b>STOP DATABASE MANAGER</b>       | <p>Stops the current database manager instance. Unless explicitly stopped, the database manager continues to be active. This command does not stop the database manager instance if any applications are connected to databases. If there are no database connections, but there are instance attachments, the command forces the instance attachments to stop first. Then, it stops the database manager. This command also deactivates any outstanding database activations before stopping the database manager.</p> <p>This command is not valid on a client.</p> <p>The server starts and stops the instance and database whenever the server starts and halts.</p> <p><b>Important:</b> Allow the server to manage the starting and stopping of the instance and database unless otherwise directed by IBM support.</p> | <p>Stop the database manager:</p> <pre>db2 stop dbm</pre>                                                                                              |



## Chapter 7. Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect

You can use the following procedures to uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect. Before you remove IBM Spectrum Protect, ensure that you do not lose your backup and archive data.

### Before you begin

Complete the following steps before you uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect:

- Complete a full database backup.
- Save a copy of the volume history and device configuration files.
- Store the output volumes in a safe location.

### About this task

You can uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect by using any of the following methods: a graphical wizard, the command line in console mode, or silent mode.

### What to do next

Reinstall the IBM Spectrum Protect components.

## Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect by using a graphical wizard

You can uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect by using the IBM Installation Manager installation wizard.

### Procedure

1. Start the Installation Manager.

In the directory where the Installation Manager is installed, go to the eclipse subdirectory (for example, /opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse), and issue the following command:

```
./IBMIM
```

2. Click **Uninstall**.
3. Select **IBM Spectrum Protect server**, and click **Next**.
4. Click **Uninstall**.
5. Click **Finish**.

## Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect in console mode

To uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect by using the command line, you must run the uninstallation program of IBM Installation Manager from the command line with the parameter for console mode.

### Procedure

1. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the following subdirectory:

eclipse/tools

For example:

/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools

2. From the tools directory, issue the following command:

```
./imcl -c
```

3. To uninstall, enter 5.
4. Choose to uninstall from the IBM Spectrum Protect package group.

5. Enter N for Next.
6. Choose to uninstall the IBM Spectrum Protect server package.
7. Enter N for Next.
8. Enter U for Uninstall.
9. Enter F for Finish.

## Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode

To uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect in silent mode, you must run the uninstallation program of IBM Installation Manager from the command line with the parameters for silent mode.

### Before you begin

You can use a response file to provide data input to silently uninstall the IBM Spectrum Protect server components. IBM Spectrum Protect includes a sample response file, `uninstall_response_sample.xml`, in the `input` directory where the installation package is extracted. This file contains default values to help you avoid any unnecessary warnings.

If you want to uninstall all IBM Spectrum Protect components, leave `modify="false"` set for each component in the response file. If you do not want to uninstall a component, set the value to `modify="true"`.

If you want to customize the response file, you can modify the options that are in the file. For information about response files, see [Response files](#).

### Procedure

1. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the following subdirectory:

```
eclipse/tools
```

For example:

```
/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
```

2. From the `tools` directory, issue the following command, where *response\_file* represents the response file path, including the file name:

```
./imcl -input response_file -silent
```

The following command is an example:

```
./imcl -input /tmp/input/uninstall_response.xml -silent
```

## Uninstalling and reinstalling IBM Spectrum Protect

If you plan to manually reinstall IBM Spectrum Protect instead of using the wizard, there are a number of steps to take to preserve your server instance names and database directories. During an uninstallation, any server instances previously set up are removed, but the database catalogs for those instances still exist.

### About this task

To manually uninstall and reinstall IBM Spectrum Protect, complete the following steps:

1. Make a list of your current server instances before proceeding to the uninstallation. Run the following command:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2ilist
```

2. Run the following commands for every server instance:

```
db2 attach to instance_name
db2 get dbm cfg show detail
db2 detach
```

Keep a record of the database path for each instance.

### 3. Uninstall IBM Spectrum Protect.

4. When you uninstall any supported version of IBM Spectrum Protect, including a fix pack, an instance file is created. The instance file is created to help reinstall IBM Spectrum Protect. Check this file and use the information when you are prompted for the instance credentials when reinstalling. In silent installation mode, you provide these credentials using the `INSTANCE_CRED` variable.

You can find the instance file in the following location:

```
/etc/tivoli/tsm/instanceList.obj
```

### 5. Reinstall IBM Spectrum Protect.

If the `instanceList.obj` file does not exist, you need to recreate your server instances using the following steps:

- a. Recreate your server instances.

**Tip:** The installation wizard configures the server instances but you must verify that they exist. If they do not exist, you must manually configure them.

- b. Catalog the database. Log in to each server instance as the instance user, one at a time, and issue the following commands:

```
db2 catalog database tsmdb1
db2 attach to instance_name
db2 update dbm cfg using dftdbpath instance_directory
db2 detach
```

- c. Verify that the server instance was created successfully. Issue this command:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/db2/instance/db2ilist
```

- d. Verify that IBM Spectrum Protect recognizes the server instance by listing your directories. Your home directory appears if you did not change it. Your instance directory does appear if you used the configuration wizard. Issue this command:

```
db2 list database directory
```

If you see `TSMDB1` listed, you can start the server.

## Uninstalling IBM Installation Manager

You can uninstall IBM Installation Manager if you no longer have any products that were installed by IBM Installation Manager.

### Before you begin

Before you uninstall IBM Installation Manager, you must ensure that all packages that were installed by IBM Installation Manager are uninstalled. Close IBM Installation Manager before you start the uninstall process.

To view installed packages, issue the following command from a command line:

```
cd /opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
./imcl listInstalledPackages
```

### Procedure

To uninstall IBM Installation Manager, complete the following steps:

## Uninstalling IBM Spectrum Protect

- 1. Open a command line and change directories to `/var/ibm/InstallationManager/uninstall`.
  2. Issue the following command:

```
./uninstall
```

**Restriction:** You must be logged in to the system as the root user ID.

# Part 2. Installing and upgrading the Operations Center

The IBM Spectrum Protect Operations Center is the web-based interface for managing your storage environment.

## Before you begin

Before you install and configure the Operations Center, review the following information:

- [System requirements for the Operations Center](#)
  - [Operations Center computer requirements](#)
  - [Hub and spoke server requirements](#)
  - [Operating system requirements](#)
  - [Web browser requirements](#)
  - [Language requirements](#)
  - [Requirements and limitations for IBM Spectrum Protect client management services](#)
- [Administrator IDs that the Operations Center requires](#)
- [IBM Installation Manager](#)
- [Installation checklist](#)
- [Obtaining the Operations Center installation package](#)

## About this task

Table 24 on page 117 lists the methods for installing or uninstalling the Operations Center and indicates where to find the associated instructions.

For information about upgrading the Operations Center, see [Upgrading the Operations Center](#).

| Table 24. Methods for installing or uninstalling the Operations Center |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Method                                                                 | Instructions                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Graphical wizard                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Installing the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Uninstalling the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard</a></li></ul> |
| Console mode                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Installing the Operations Center in console mode</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Uninstalling the Operations Center in console mode</a></li></ul>                         |
| Silent mode                                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Installing the Operations Center in silent mode</a></li><li>• <a href="#">“Uninstalling the Operations Center in silent mode” on page 183</a></li></ul>             |





## Chapter 8. Planning to install the Operations Center

Before you install the Operations Center, you must understand the system requirements, the administrator IDs that the Operations Center requires, and the information that you must provide to the installation program.

### About this task

From the Operations Center, you can manage the following primary aspects of the storage environment:

- IBM Spectrum Protect servers and clients
- Services such as backup and restore, archive and retrieve, and migrate and recall
- Storage pools and storage devices

The Operations Center includes the following features:

### User interface for multiple servers

You can use the Operations Center to manage one or more IBM Spectrum Protect servers.

In an environment with multiple servers, you can designate one server as a *hub server* and the others as *spoke servers*. The hub server can receive alerts and status information from the spoke servers and present the information in a consolidated view in the Operations Center.

### Alert monitoring

An *alert* is a notification of a relevant problem on the server and is triggered by a server message. You can define which server messages trigger alerts, and only those messages are reported as alerts in the Operations Center or in an email.

This alert monitoring can help you identify and track relevant problems on the server.

### Convenient command-line interface

The Operations Center includes a command-line interface for advanced features and configuration.

## System requirements for the Operations Center

Before you install the Operations Center, ensure that your system meets the minimum requirements.

Use the [Operations Center System Requirements Calculator](#) to estimate the system requirements for running the Operations Center and the hub and spoke servers that are monitored by the Operations Center.

### Requirements that are verified during the installation

Table 25 on page 119 lists the prerequisite requirements that are verified during the installation and indicates where to find more information about these requirements.

| Table 25. Requirements that are verified during the installation         |                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Requirement                                                              | Details                                                               |
| Minimum memory requirement                                               | <a href="#">“Operations Center computer requirements” on page 120</a> |
| Operating system requirement                                             | <a href="#">“Operating system requirements” on page 123</a>           |
| Host name for the computer where the Operations Center will be installed | <a href="#">“Installation checklist” on page 127</a>                  |
| Requirements for the Operations Center installation directory            | <a href="#">“Installation checklist” on page 127</a>                  |

Operations Center computer requirements

You can install the Operations Center on a computer that is also running IBM Spectrum Protect server or on a different computer. If you install the Operations Center on the same computer as a server, that computer must meet the system requirements for both the Operations Center and the server.

Resource requirements

The following resources are required to run the Operations Center:

- One processor core
- 4 GB of memory
- 1 GB of disk space

The hub and spoke servers that are monitored by the Operations Center require additional resources, as described in [“Hub and spoke server requirements” on page 120](#).

Hub and spoke server requirements

When you open the Operations Center for the first time, you must associate the Operations Center with one IBM Spectrum Protect server that is designated as the *hub server*. In a multiple-server environment, you can connect the other servers, called *spoke servers*, to the hub server.

The spoke servers send alerts and status information to the hub server. The Operations Center shows you a consolidated view of alerts and status information for the hub server and any spoke servers.

If only one server is monitored by the Operations Center, that server is still called a hub server, even though no spoke servers are connected to it.

Table 26 on page 120 indicates the version of IBM Spectrum Protect server that must be installed on the hub server and on each spoke server that is managed by the Operations Center.

| Table 26. IBM Spectrum Protect server version requirements for hub and spoke servers |                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operations Center                                                                    | Version on the hub server | Version on each spoke server                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| V8.1.10                                                                              | V8.1.10                   | V8.1.7 or later<br>or<br>V7.1.10 or a later Version 7 release<br><b>Restrictions:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Some Operations Center functions are not available for servers that use a version earlier than V8.1.10.</li><li>• A spoke server cannot use a version that is later than the version on the hub server.</li></ul> |

For information about hub and spoke server compatibility requirements for other versions of the Operations Center, see [technote 496593](#).

Number of spoke servers that a hub server can support

The number of spoke servers that a hub server can support depends on the configuration and on the version of IBM Spectrum Protect on each spoke server. However, a general guideline is that a hub server can support 10 - 20 V6.3.4 spoke servers but can support more V7.1 or later spoke servers.

### Tips for designing the hub and spoke server configuration

In designing the hub and spoke configuration, especially consider the resource requirements for status monitoring. Also, consider how you want to group hub and spoke servers and whether you want to use multiple hub servers.

Use the [Operations Center System Requirements Calculator](#) to estimate the system requirements for running the Operations Center and the hub and spoke servers that are monitored by the Operations Center.

### Primary factors that affect performance

The following factors have the most significant impact on the performance of the Operations Center:

- The processor and memory on the computer where the Operations Center is installed
- The system resources of the hub and spoke servers, including the disk system that is in use for the hub server database
- The number of client nodes and virtual machine file spaces that are managed by the hub and spoke servers
- The frequency at which data is refreshed in the Operations Center

### How to group hub and spoke servers

Consider grouping hub and spoke servers by geographic location. For example, managing the servers within the same data center can help prevent issues that are caused by firewalls or by inadequate network bandwidth between different locations. If necessary, you can further divide servers according to one or more of the following characteristics:

- The administrator who manages the servers
- The organizational entity that funds the servers
- Server operating system
- The language in which the servers run

**Tip:** If the hub and spoke servers are not running in the same language, you might see corrupted text in the Operations Center.

### How to group hub and spoke servers in an enterprise configuration

In an enterprise configuration, a network of IBM Spectrum Protect servers are managed as a group. Changes that are made on the *configuration manager* can be distributed automatically to one or more *managed servers* in the network.

The Operations Center normally registers and maintains a dedicated administrator ID on the hub and spoke servers. This *monitoring administrator* must always have the same password on all the servers.

If you use an enterprise configuration, you can improve the process by which the administrator credentials are synchronized on spoke servers. To improve the performance and efficiency of maintaining the monitoring administrator ID, complete the following steps:

1. Designate the configuration manager server as the Operations Center hub server. During the hub server configuration, a monitoring administrator ID named IBM-OC-*hub\_server\_name* is registered.
2. On the hub server, add the monitoring administrator ID to a new or existing enterprise configuration profile. Issue the NOTIFY SUBSCRIBERS command to distribute the profile to the managed servers.
3. Add one or more of the managed servers as Operations Center spoke servers.

The Operations Center detects this configuration and allows the configuration manager to distribute and update the monitoring administrator ID on the spoke servers.

### When to use multiple hub servers

If you have more than 10 - 20 V6.3.4 spoke servers, or if resource limitations require the environment to be partitioned, you can configure multiple hub servers, and connect a subset of the spoke servers to each hub server.

#### Restrictions:

- A single server cannot be both a hub server and a spoke server.
- Each spoke server can be assigned to only one hub server.
- Each hub server requires a separate instance of the Operations Center, each of which has a separate web address.

### Tips for choosing a hub server

For the hub server, you must choose a server that has adequate resources and is located for minimal roundtrip network latency.



**Attention:** Do not use the same server as the hub server for multiple Operations Centers.

Use the following guidelines in deciding which server to designate as the hub server:

#### Choose a lightly loaded server

Consider a server that has a light load for operations such as client backup and archive. A lightly loaded server is also a good choice as the host system for the Operations Center.

Ensure that the server has the resources to handle both its typical server workload and the estimated workload for acting as the hub server.

#### Locate the server for minimal roundtrip network latency

Locate the hub server so that the network connection between the hub server and the spoke servers has a roundtrip latency that is no greater than 5 ms. This latency can typically be achieved when the servers are on the same local area network (LAN).

Networks that are poorly tuned, are heavily used by other applications, or have roundtrip latency much higher than 5 ms can degrade communications between the hub and spoke servers. For example, roundtrip latencies of 50 ms or higher can result in communication timeouts that cause spoke servers to disconnect or reconnect to the Operations Center. Such high latencies might be experienced in long-distance, wide area network (WAN) communications.

If spoke servers are a long distance from the hub server and experience frequent disconnects in the Operations Center, you can increase the value of the **ADMINCOMMTIMEOUT** option on each server to reduce the problem.

#### Verify that the hub server meets the resource requirements for status monitoring

Status monitoring requires extra resources on each server on which it is enabled. The resources that are required depend primarily on the number of clients that are managed by the hub and spoke servers. Fewer resources are used on a hub server with a V7.1 or later spoke server than on a hub server with a V6.3.4 spoke server.

Verify that the hub server meets the resource requirements for processor usage, database space, archive log space, and I/O operations per second (IOPS) capacity.

A hub server with high IOPS capacity can handle a larger amount of incoming status data from spoke servers. Use of the following storage devices for the hub server database can help meet this capacity:

- An enterprise-level solid-state drive (SSD)
- An external SAN disk storage device with multiple volumes or multiple spindles under each volume

In an environment with fewer than 1000 clients, consider establishing a baseline capacity of 1000 IOPS for the hub server database if the hub server manages any spoke servers.

#### Determine whether your environment requires multiple hub servers

If more than 10,000 - 20,000 client nodes and virtual machine file spaces are managed by one set of hub and spoke servers, the resource requirements might exceed what the hub server has available,

especially if the spoke servers are V6.3.4 servers. Consider designating a second server as a hub server and moving spoke servers to the new hub server to balance the load.

## Operating system requirements

The Operations Center is available for AIX, Linux, and Windows systems.

You can run the Operations Center on the following systems.

Operations Center support for AIX and Linux systems is limited to Big Endian versions only, unless otherwise noted.

- Linux on x86\_64 systems:
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 or later
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, Service Pack 3 or later
- Linux on System z (s390x 64-bit architecture) systems:
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 or later
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, Service Pack 2 or later
- Linux on Power Systems (little endian) systems:
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 with the PPC64LE architecture
  - SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 12, Service Pack 3 or later

For the most up-to-date requirements information, see [Software and Hardware Requirements](#).

## Web browser requirements

The Operations Center can run in Apple, Google, Microsoft, and Mozilla web browsers.

For optimal viewing of the Operations Center in the web browser, ensure that the screen resolution for the system is set to a minimum of 1024 X 768 pixels.

For optimal performance, use a web browser that has good JavaScript performance, and enable browser caching.

The Operations Center can run in the following web browsers:

- Apple Safari on the iPad

**Restriction:** If Apple Safari is running on iOS 8.x or iOS 9.x, you cannot use a self-signed certificate for secure communication with the Operations Center without extra configuration of the certificate. Use a certificate authority (CA) certificate, or configure the self-signed certificate as needed. For instructions, see Technote <http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21963153>.

- Google Chrome 54 or later
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 11 or later
- Mozilla Firefox ESR 45 or version 48 or later

Communication between the Operations Center and the web browser must be secured by using the Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.2 protocol. The web browser must support TLS 1.2, and TLS 1.2 must be enabled. The web browser displays an SSL error if it does not meet these requirements.

Beginning with IBM Spectrum Protect Version 8.1.10, you can enable the TLS 1.3 protocol to secure communications between servers, clients, and storage agents. To use TLS 1.3, both parties in the communication session must use TLS 1.3. If either party uses TLS 1.2, then both parties use TLS 1.2 by default.

For the most up-to-date requirements information, see [Software and Hardware Requirements](#).

## Language requirements

By default, the Operations Center uses the language that the web browser uses. However, the installation process uses the language that the operating system uses. Verify that the web browser and the operating system are set to the language that you require.

| <i>Table 27. Operations Center language values that you can use on Linux systems</i> |                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>Language</b>                                                                      | <b>Language option value</b> |
| Chinese, Simplified                                                                  | zh_CN                        |
| Chinese, Simplified (GBK)                                                            | zh_CN.gb18030                |
| Chinese, Simplified (UTF-8)                                                          | zh_CN.utf8                   |
| Chinese, Traditional (Big5)                                                          | Zh_TW                        |
| Chinese, Traditional (euc_tw)                                                        | zh_TW                        |
| Chinese, Traditional (UTF-8)                                                         | zh_TW.utf8                   |
| English, United States                                                               | en_US                        |
| English (UTF-8)                                                                      | en_US.utf8                   |
| French                                                                               | fr_FR                        |
| French (UTF-8)                                                                       | fr_FR.utf8                   |
| German                                                                               | de_DE                        |
| German (UTF-8)                                                                       | de_DE.utf8                   |
| Italian                                                                              | it_IT                        |
| Italian (UTF-8)                                                                      | it_IT.utf8                   |
| Japanese (EUC)                                                                       | ja_JP                        |
| Japanese (UTF-8)                                                                     | ja_JP.utf8                   |
| Korean                                                                               | ko_KR                        |
| Korean (UTF-8)                                                                       | ko_KR.utf8                   |
| Portuguese, Brazilian                                                                | pt_BR                        |
| Portuguese, Brazilian (UTF-8)                                                        | pt_BR.utf8                   |
| Russian                                                                              | ru_RU                        |
| Russian (UTF-8)                                                                      | ru_RU.utf8                   |
| Spanish                                                                              | es_ES                        |
| Spanish (UTF-8)                                                                      | es_ES.utf8                   |

## Requirements and limitations for IBM Spectrum Protect client management services

IBM Spectrum Protect client management services is a component that you install on backup-archive clients to collect diagnostic information such as client log files. Before you install the client management service on your system, you must understand the requirements and limitations.

In the documentation for the client management service, *client system* is the system where the backup-archive client is installed.

Diagnostic information can be collected only from Linux and Windows clients, but administrators can view the diagnostic information in the Operations Center on AIX, Linux, or Windows operating systems.

## Requirements for the client management service

Verify the following requirements before you install the client management service:

- To remotely access the client, the Operations Center administrator must have system authority or one of the following client authority levels:
  - Policy authority
  - Client owner authority
  - Client node access authority
- Ensure that the client system meets the following requirements:
  - The client management service can be installed only on client systems that run on Linux or Windows operating systems:
    - Linux x86 64-bit operating systems that are supported for the backup-archive client.
    - Windows 32-bit and 64-bit operating systems that are supported for the backup-archive client.
  - Transport Layer Security (TLS) version 1.2 must be installed for transmission of data between the client management service and Operations Center. Basic authentication is provided and data and authentication information are encrypted through the SSL channel. TLS is automatically installed along with the necessary SSL certificates when you install the client management service.
- On Linux client systems, you must have root user authority to install the client management service.
- For client systems that can have multiple client nodes, such as Linux client systems, ensure that each node name is unique on the client system.

**Tip:** After you install the client management service, you do not have to install it again because the service can discover multiple client options files.

## Limitations of the client management service

The client management service provides basic services for collecting diagnostic information from backup-archive clients. The following limitations exist for the client management service:

- You can install the client management service only on systems with backup-archive clients, including backup-archive clients that are installed on data mover nodes for IBM Spectrum Protect for Virtual Environments; Data Protection for VMware.
- You cannot install the client management service on other IBM Spectrum Protect client components or products that do not have backup-archive clients.
- If the backup-archive clients are protected by a firewall, ensure that the Operations Center can connect to the backup-archive clients through the firewall by using the configured port for the client management service. The default port is 9028, but it can be changed.
- The client management service scans all client log files to locate entries for the previous 72-hour period.
- The **Diagnosis** page in the Operations Center provides basic troubleshooting information for backup-archive clients. However, for some backup issues, you might have to access the client system and obtain further diagnostic information.
- If the combined size of the client error log files and schedule log files on a client system is more than 500 MB, delays can occur in sending log records to the Operations Center. You can control the size of the log files by enabling log file pruning or wrapping by specifying the **errorlogretention** or **errorlogmax** client option.
- If you use the same client node name to connect to multiple IBM Spectrum Protect servers that are installed on the same server, you can view log files for only one of the client nodes.

For updates about the client management service, including requirements, limitations, and documentation updates, see [technote 1963610](#).

## Related tasks

[“Collecting diagnostic information with IBM Spectrum Protect client management services” on page 161](#)

The client management service collects diagnostic information about backup-archive clients and makes the information available to the Operations Center for basic monitoring capability.

### Administrator IDs that the Operations Center requires

An administrator must have a valid ID and password on the hub server to log in to the Operations Center. An administrator ID is also assigned to the Operations Center so that the Operations Center can monitor servers.

The Operations Center requires the following IBM Spectrum Protect administrator IDs:

#### Administrator IDs that are registered on the hub server

Any administrator ID that is registered on the hub server can be used to log in to the Operations Center. The authority level of the ID determines which tasks can be completed. You can create new administrator IDs by using the **REGISTER ADMIN** command.

**Restriction:** To use an administrator ID in a multiple-server configuration, the ID must be registered on the hub and spoke servers with the same password and authority level.

To manage authentication for these servers, consider using one of the following methods:

- A Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server
- The enterprise configuration functions to automatically distribute changes to the administrator definitions.

#### Monitoring administrator ID

When you initially configure the hub server, an administrator ID named `IBM-OC-server_name` is registered with system authority on the hub server and is associated with the initial password that you specify. This ID, which is sometimes called the *monitoring administrator*, is intended for use only by the Operations Center.

Do not delete, lock, or modify this ID. The same administrator ID with the same password is registered on the spoke servers that you add. The password is automatically changed on the hub and spoke servers every 90 days. You do not need to use or manage this password.

**Restriction:** The Operations Center maintains the monitoring administrator ID and password on spoke servers unless you use an enterprise configuration to manage these credentials. For more information about using an enterprise configuration to manage the credentials, see [“Tips for designing the hub and spoke server configuration” on page 121](#).

### IBM Installation Manager

The Operations Center uses IBM Installation Manager, which is an installation program that can use remote or local software repositories to install or update many IBM products.

If the required version of IBM Installation Manager is not already installed, it is automatically installed or upgraded when you install the Operations Center. It must remain installed on the system so that the Operations Center can be updated or uninstalled later as needed.

The following list contains explanations of some terms that are used in IBM Installation Manager:

#### Offering

An installable unit of a software product.

The Operations Center offering contains all of the media that IBM Installation Manager requires to install the Operations Center.

#### Package

The group of software components that are required to install an offering.

The Operations Center package contains the following components:

- IBM Installation Manager installation program
- Operations Center offering



**Package group**

A set of packages that share a common parent directory.

**Repository**

A remote or local storage area for data and other application resources.

The Operations Center package is stored in a repository on IBM Fix Central.

**Shared resources directory**

A directory that contains software files or plug-ins that are shared by packages.

IBM Installation Manager stores installation-related files in the shared resources directory, including files that are used for rolling back to a previous version of the Operations Center.

**Installation checklist**

Before you install the Operations Center, you must verify certain information, such as the installation credentials, and you must determine the input to provide to IBM Installation Manager for the installation.

The following checklist highlights the information that you must verify or determine before you install the Operations Center, and [Table 28 on page 127](#) describes the details of this information:

- \_\_\_ Verify the host name for the computer where the Operations Center is to be installed.
- \_\_\_ Verify the installation credentials.
- \_\_\_ Determine the Operations Center installation directory, if you do not want to accept the default path.
- \_\_\_ Determine the IBM Installation Manager installation directory, if you do not want to accept the default path.
- \_\_\_ Determine the port number to be used by the Operations Center web server, if you do not want to accept the default port number.
- \_\_\_ Determine the password for secure communications.

| <i>Table 28. Information to verify or determine before you install the Operations Center</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Information</b>                                                                           | <b>Details</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Host name for the computer where the Operations Center is to be installed.                   | <p>The host name must meet the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It must not contain double-byte character set (DBCS) characters or the underscore character (_).</li> <li>• Although the host name can contain the hyphen character (-), it cannot have a hyphen as the last character in the name.</li> </ul> |
| Installation credentials                                                                     | <p>To install the Operations Center, you must use the following user account:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The root user</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                            |

*Table 28. Information to verify or determine before you install the Operations Center (continued)*

| Information                                                   | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operations Center installation directory                      | <p>The Operations Center is installed in the <code>ui</code> subdirectory of the installation directory.</p> <p>The following path is the default path for the Operations Center installation directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>/opt/tivoli/tsm</code></li> </ul> <p>For example, if you use this default path, the Operations Center is installed in the following directory:</p> <pre>/opt/tivoli/tsm/ui</pre> <p>The installation directory path must meet the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The path must contain no more than 128 characters.</li> <li>• The path must include only ASCII characters.</li> <li>• The path cannot include non-displayable control characters.</li> <li>• The path cannot include any of the following characters:</li> </ul> <pre>%   &lt; &gt; ' " \$ &amp; ; *</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| IBM Installation Manager installation directory               | <p>The following path is the default path for the IBM Installation Manager installation directory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>/opt/IBM/InstallationManager</code></li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Port number that is used by the Operations Center web server. | <p>The value for the secure (https) port number must meet the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The number must be an integer in the range 1024 - 65535.</li> <li>• The number cannot be in use or allocated to other programs.</li> </ul> <p>If you do not specify a port number, the default value is 11090.</p> <p><b>Tips:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Although you must specify an integer in the range 1024 - 65535, you can later configure the Operations Center to use the standard TCP/IP secure port (port 443). For more information, see <a href="#">“Configuring the Operations Center web server to use the standard TCP/IP secure port”</a> on page 142.</li> <li>• If you later do not remember the port number that you specified, refer to the following file, where <i>installation_dir</i> represents the directory where the Operations Center is installed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <i>installation_dir</i>/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer/bootstrap.properties</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The <code>bootstrap.properties</code> file contains the IBM Spectrum Protect server connection information.</p> |

Table 28. Information to verify or determine before you install the Operations Center (continued)

| Information                        | Details                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Password for secure communications | <p>The Operations Center uses Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) to communicate with web browsers.</p> <p>The Operations Center requires secure communication between the server and the Operations Center. To secure communication, you must add the Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificate of the hub server to the truststore file of the Operations Center.</p> <p>The truststore file of the Operations Center contains the certificate that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication with web browsers. During installation of the Operations Center, you create a password for the truststore file. When you set up secure communication between the Operations Center and the hub server, you must use the same password to add the certificate of the hub server to the truststore file.</p> <p>The password for the truststore file must meet the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The password must contain a minimum of 6 characters and a maximum of 64 characters.</li> <li>• The password must contain at least the following characters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– One uppercase letter (A – Z)</li> <li>– One lowercase letter (a – z)</li> <li>– One digit (0 – 9)</li> <li>– Two of the non-alphanumeric characters that are listed in the following series:</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <div> ~ @ # \$ % ^ &amp; * _ - + = `   </div> <div data-bbox="553 1113 1469 1165"> ( ) { } [ ] : ; &lt; &gt; , . ? / </div> |



## Chapter 9. Installing the Operations Center

You can install the Operations Center by using any of the following methods: a graphical wizard, the command line in console mode, or silent mode.

### Before you begin

You cannot configure the Operations Center until you install, configure, and start the IBM Spectrum Protect server. Therefore, before you install the Operations Center, install the appropriate server package, according to the server version requirements in [“Hub and spoke server requirements”](#) on page 120.

You can install the Operations Center on a computer with the IBM Spectrum Protect server or on a separate computer.

## Obtaining the Operations Center installation package

You can obtain the installation package from an IBM download site such as IBM Passport Advantage or IBM Fix Central.

### About this task

After you obtain the package from an IBM download site, you must extract the installation files.

### Procedure

Complete the following steps to extract the Operations Center installation files. In the following steps, replace *version\_number* with the version of Operations Center that you are installing.

- a. Download one of the following package files to the directory of your choice:

- *version\_number.000-IBM-SPOC-LinuxS390.bin*
- *version\_number.000-IBM-SPOC-Linuxx86\_64.bin*

- b. Ensure that you have executable permission for the package file.

If necessary, change the file permissions by issuing the following command:

```
chmod a+x package_name.bin
```

- c. Issue the following command to extract the installation files:

```
./package_name.bin
```

The self-extracting package file is extracted to the directory.

## Installing the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard

You can install or update the Operations Center by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager.

### Procedure

1. From the directory where the Operations Center installation package file is extracted, issue the following command:

```
./install.sh
```

2. Follow the wizard instructions to install the IBM Installation Manager and Operations Center packages.

### What to do next

See [“Configuring the Operations Center” on page 137](#).

## Installing the Operations Center in console mode

You can install or update the Operations Center by using the command line in console mode.

### Procedure

1. From the directory where the installation package file is extracted, run the following program:

```
./install.sh -c
```

2. Follow the console instructions to install the Installation Manager and Operations Center packages.

### What to do next

See [“Configuring the Operations Center” on page 137](#).

## Installing the Operations Center in silent mode

You can install or upgrade the Operations Center in silent mode. In silent mode, the installation does not send messages to a console but instead stores messages and errors in log files.

### Before you begin

To provide data input when you use the silent installation method, you can use a response file. The following sample response files are provided in the `input` directory where the installation package is extracted:

#### **install\_response\_sample.xml**

Use this file to install the Operations Center.

#### **update\_response\_sample.xml**

Use this file to upgrade the Operations Center.

These files contain default values that can help you avoid any unnecessary warnings. To use these files, follow the instructions that are provided in the files.

If you want to customize a response file, you can modify the options that are in the file. For information about response files, see [Response files](#).

### Procedure

1. Create a response file.

You can modify the sample response file or create your own file.

**Tip:** To generate a response file as part of a console-mode installation, complete the selection of the console-mode installation options. Then, in the **Summary** panel, enter G to generate the response file according to the previously selected options.

2. Create a password for the Operations Center truststore in the response file.

If you are using the `install_response_sample.xml` file, add the password in the following line of the file, where *mypassword* represents the password:

```
<variable name='ssl.password' value='mypassword' />
```

For more information about this password, see [“Installation checklist” on page 127](#).

To encrypt the password, follow the instructions in [“Encrypting passwords in silent installation response files” on page 133](#).

**Tip:** To upgrade the Operations Center, the truststore password is not required if you are using the `update_response_sample.xml` file.

3. Start the silent installation by issuing the following command from the directory where the installation package is extracted. The value `response_file` represents the response file path and file name:

- ```
./install.sh -s -input response_file -acceptLicense
```

What to do next

See [“Configuring the Operations Center” on page 137](#).

Encrypting passwords in silent installation response files

For added security during a silent installation of the Operations Center, you can encrypt the password in the response file. Only one password (encrypted or unencrypted) can be listed in the data key field in the response file.

Before you begin

Open IBM Installation Manager. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the `eclipse` subdirectory. By default, the subdirectory is in the following location:

```
/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse
```

Procedure

To encrypt the password in the response file that is used to silently install the Operations Center and ensure that only one password is used in the data key field, complete the following steps:

1. If you are installing the Operations Center as the root user, go to the `tools` subdirectory. By default, the `tools` subdirectory is in the following location:

```
/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
```

If you are installing the Operations Center as a non-root user, go to this subdirectory:

```
/home/non_root_user/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
```

where `non_root_user` is the instance user ID.

2. Issue the following command on one line:

```
./IBMIM -silent -noSplash encryptString string_to_encrypt  
>encrypted_pwd
```

where `string_to_encrypt` is the value that is encrypted and `encrypted_pwd` is the file that contains the encrypted value.

3. Open the encrypted password file and copy the value into the data key field of the response file. Then, remove the encrypted password file by commenting it out.
4. To remove the non-encrypted password from the data key field, complete the following steps:
 - a. Comment out the non-encrypted password (`user.SSL_PASSWORD`) so that the password row is similar to the following example:

```
<!-- <data key='user.SSL_PASSWORD' value='${ssl.password}' /> -->
```

- b. Remove the comment tags from the encrypted password (`user.SSL_PASSWORD_ENCRYPTED`) so that the password rows are similar to the following example:

```
<data key='user.enableSP800_131' value='${enable.SP800131a}' />  
<data key='user.SSL_PASSWORD_ENCRYPTED' value='${ssl.password.encrypted}' />
```

Restriction: Use only one value in the data key field in the response file, either the `user.SSL_PASSWORD` or the `user.SSL_PASSWORD_ENCRYPTED` password. You must comment out the one that you are not using or you will receive an error message and the installation will fail.

Example

Using the Installation Manager command line tool, encrypt the password `passw0rd`. Save the encrypted value to the `my_pwd.txt` file. Issue the following command:

```
./IBMIM -silent -noSplash encryptString passw0rd > my_pwd.txt
```

where the `my_pwd.txt` file contains the encrypted value, `rbN1IaMAWYYtQxLf6KdNyA==`:

```
<variable name='ssl.password.encrypted' value=' rbN1IaMAWYYtQxLf6KdNyA==' />
```

Chapter 10. Upgrading the Operations Center

You can upgrade the Operations Center by using any of the following methods: a graphical wizard, the command line in console mode, or silent mode.

Before you begin

Before you upgrade the Operations Center, review the system requirements and the installation checklist. The new version of the Operations Center might have more or different requirements and considerations than the version you are currently using.

About this task

The instructions for upgrading the Operations Center are the same as the instructions for installing the Operations Center, with the following exceptions:

- You use the **Update** function of IBM Installation Manager rather than the **Install** function.

Tip: In IBM Installation Manager, the term *update* means to discover and install updates and fixes to installed software packages. In this context, *update* and *upgrade* are synonymous.

- If you are upgrading the Operations Center in silent mode, you can skip the step of creating a password for the truststore file.

Chapter 11. Getting started with the Operations Center

Before you can use the Operations Center to manage your storage environment, you must configure it.

About this task

After you install the Operations Center, complete the following basic configuration steps:

1. Designate the hub server.
2. Add any spoke servers.
3. Optionally, configure email alerts on the hub and spoke servers.

Figure 1 on page 137 illustrates an Operations Center configuration.

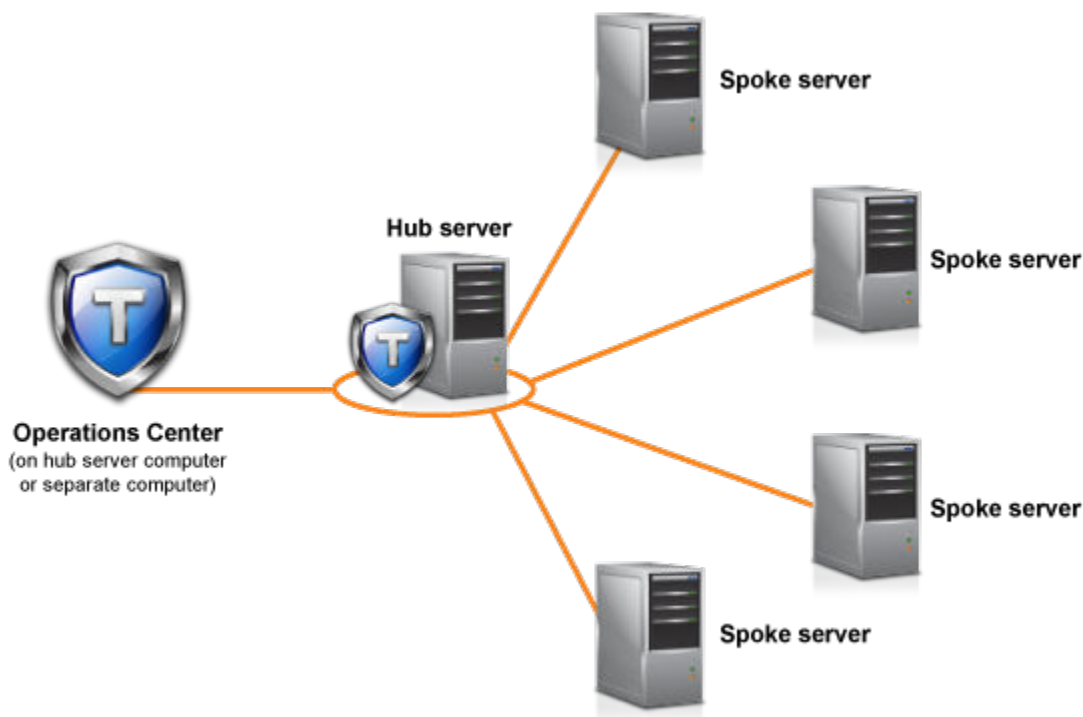


Figure 1. Example of an Operations Center configuration with the hub and spoke servers

Configuring the Operations Center

When you open the Operations Center for the first time, you must configure it to manage your storage environment. You must associate the Operations Center with the IBM Spectrum Protect server that is designated as the hub server. You can then connect additional IBM Spectrum Protect servers as spoke servers.

Designating the hub server

When you connect to the Operations Center for the first time, you must designate which IBM Spectrum Protect server is the hub server.

Before you begin

The Operations Center requires secure communication between the hub server and the Operations Center. To secure communication, you must add the Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificate of the hub

server to the truststore file of the Operations Center. For more information, see [“Securing communication between the Operations Center and the hub server”](#) on page 143.

Procedure

In a web browser, enter the following address, where *hostname* represents the name of the computer where the Operations Center is installed, and *secure_port* represents the port number that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication on that computer:

```
https://hostname:secure_port/oc
```

Tips:

- The URL is case-sensitive. For example, ensure that you type "oc" in lowercase as indicated.
- For more information about the port number, see the [Installation checklist](#).
- If you are connecting to the Operations Center for the first time, you must provide the following information:
 - Connection information for the server that you want to designate as a hub server
 - Login credentials for an administrator ID that is defined for that server
- If the event-record retention period of the server is less than 14 days, the period is automatically reset to 14 days if you configure the server as a hub server.

What to do next

If you have multiple IBM Spectrum Protect servers in your environment, add the other servers as spoke servers to the hub server.



Attention: Do not change the name of a server after it is configured as a hub or spoke server.

Adding a spoke server

After you configure the hub server for the Operations Center, you can add one or more spoke servers to the hub server.

Before you begin

Communication between the spoke server and the hub server must be secured by using the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. To secure communication, add the certificate of the spoke server to the truststore file of the hub server.

Procedure

1. In the Operations Center menu bar, click **Servers**.

The **Servers** page opens.

In the table on the **Servers** page, a server might have a status of "Unmonitored." This status means that although an administrator defined this server to the hub server by using the **DEFINE SERVER** command, the server is not yet configured as a spoke server.

2. Complete one of the following steps:

- Click the server to highlight it, and in the table menu bar, click **Monitor Spoke**.
- If the server that you want to add is not shown in the table, and secure SSL/TLS communication is not required, click **+ Spoke** in the table menu bar.

3. Provide the necessary information, and complete the steps in the spoke configuration wizard.

Tip: If the event-record retention period of the server is less than 14 days, the period is automatically reset to 14 days if you configure the server as a spoke server.

Sending email alerts to administrators

An alert is a notification of a relevant problem on the IBM Spectrum Protect server and is triggered by a server message. Alerts can be shown in the Operations Center and can be sent from the server to administrators by email.

Before you begin

Before you configure email notification for administrators about alerts, ensure that the following requirements are met:

- An SMTP server is required to send and receive alerts by email, and the server that sends the alerts by email must have access to the SMTP server.

Tip: If the Operations Center is installed on a separate computer, that computer does not need access to the SMTP server.

- An administrator must have system privilege to configure email notification.

About this task

An email notification is sent only for the first occurrence of an alert. Also, if an alert is generated before you configure email notification, no email notification is sent for that alert.

You can configure email notification in the following ways:

- Send notification for individual alerts
- Send alert summaries

An alert summary contains information about current alerts. The summary includes the total number of alerts, the total number of active and inactive alerts, the oldest alert, the newest alert, and the most frequently occurring alert.

You can specify a maximum of three administrators to receive alert summaries by email. Alert summaries are sent approximately every hour.

Procedure

To configure email notification for administrators about alerts, complete the following steps on each hub and spoke server from which you want to receive email alerts:

1. To verify that alert monitoring is turned on, issue the following command:

```
QUERY MONITORSETTINGS
```

2. If the command output indicates that alert monitoring is turned off, issue the following command. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.

```
SET ALERTMONITOR ON
```

3. To enable the sending of email notification, issue the following command:

```
SET ALERTEMAIL ON
```

4. To define the SMTP server that is used to send email notification, issue the following command:

```
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPHOST host_name
```

5. To specify the port number for the SMTP server, issue the following command:

```
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPPORT port_number
```

The default port number is 25.

6. To specify the email address of the sender of the alerts, issue the following command:

```
SET ALERTEMAILFROMADDR email_address
```

7. For each administrator ID that must receive email notification, issue one of the following commands to activate email notification and to specify the email address:

```
REGISTER ADMIN admin_name ALERT=YES EMAILADDRESS=email_address
```

```
UPDATE ADMIN admin_name ALERT=YES EMAILADDRESS=email_address
```

8. Choose either, or both, of the following options, and specify the administrator IDs to receive email notification:

- Send notification for individual alerts

To specify or update the administrator IDs to receive email notification for an individual alert, issue one of the following commands:

```
DEFINE ALERTTRIGGER message_number  
ADMin=admin_name1,admin_name2
```

```
UPDATE ALERTTRIGGER message_number  
ADDAdmin=admin_name3 DELAdmin=admin_name1
```

Tip: From the **Configure Alerts** page of the Operations Center, you can select the administrators who will receive email notification.

- Send alert summaries

To specify or update the administrator IDs to receive alert summaries by email, issue the following command:

```
SET ALERTSUMMARYTOADMINS admin_name1,  
admin_name2,admin_name3
```

If you want to receive alert summaries but do not want to receive notification about individual alerts, complete the following steps:

- a. Suspend notification about individual alerts, as described in [“Suspending email alerts temporarily” on page 141](#).
- b. Ensure that the respective administrator ID is listed in the following command:

```
SET ALERTSUMMARYTOADMINS admin_name1,  
admin_name2,admin_name3
```

Sending email alerts to multiple administrators

The following example illustrates the commands that cause any alerts for message ANR1075E to be sent in an email to the administrators myadmin, djadmin, and csadmin:

```
SET ALERTMONITOR ON  
SET ALERTEMAIL ON  
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPHOST mymailserver.domain.com  
SET ALERTEMAILSMTPPORT 450  
SET ALERTEMAILFROMADDR srvadmin@mydomain.com  
UPDATE ADMIN myadmin ALERT=YES EMAILADDRESS=myaddr@anycompany.com  
UPDATE ADMIN djadmin ALERT=YES EMAILADDRESS=djaddr@anycompany.com  
UPDATE ADMIN csadmin ALERT=YES EMAILADDRESS=csaddr@anycompany.com  
DEFINE ALERTTRIGGER anr0175e ADMIN=myadmin,djadmin,csadmin
```

Suspending email alerts temporarily

In certain situations, you might want to suspend email alerts temporarily. For example, you might want to receive alert summaries but suspend notification about individual alerts, or you might want to suspend email alerts when an administrator is on vacation.

Before you begin

Configure email notification for administrators, as described in [“Sending email alerts to administrators”](#) on page 139.

Procedure

Suspend email notification for individual alerts or for alert summaries.

- Suspend notification about individual alerts

Use either of the following methods:

UPDATE ADMIN command

To turn off email notification for the administrator, issue the following command:

```
UPDATE ADMIN admin_name ALERT=NO
```

To turn on email notification again later, issue the following command:

```
UPDATE ADMIN admin_name ALERT=YES
```

UPDATE ALERTTRIGGER command

To prevent a specific alert from being sent to an administrator, issue the following command:

```
UPDATE ALERTTRIGGER message_number DELADMIN=admin_name
```

To start sending that alert to the administrator again, issue the following command:

```
UPDATE ALERTTRIGGER message_number ADDADMIN=admin_name
```

- Suspend notification about alert summaries

To prevent alert summaries from being sent to an administrator, remove the administrator ID from the list in the following command:

```
SET ALERTSUMMARYTOADMINS admin_name1,admin_name2,admin_name3
```

If an administrator ID is listed in the preceding command, the administrator receives alert summaries by email, even if notification about individual alerts is suspended for the respective administrator ID.

Adding customized text to the login screen

You can add customized text, such as your organization's Terms of Use of the software, to the login screen of the Operations Center so that users of the Operations Center see the text before they enter their user name and password.

Procedure

To add customized text to the login screen, complete the following steps:

1. On the computer where the Operations Center is installed, go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
2. In the directory, create a file that is named `loginText.html` that contains the text that you want to add to the login screen.
Any special, non-ASCII text must be UTF-8 encoded.
3. Review the added text on the login screen of the Operations Center.

To open the Operations Center, enter the following address in a web browser, where *hostname* represents the name of the computer where the Operations Center is installed, and *secure_port* represents the port number that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication on that computer:

```
https://hostname:secure_port/oc
```

Configuring the Operations Center web server to use the standard TCP/IP secure port

Port 443 is the standard port for secure web browser communication. If users must access the Operations Center through a firewall, you can configure the Operations Center to communicate through this standard port. In this way, you can avoid opening another port in the firewall.

About this task

When you install the Operations Center, the default port number for secure communication between the Operations Center web server and web browsers is 11090. You can accept this default port at installation time, or you can specify a different port number in the range 1024 - 65535. You cannot specify a port number that is less than 1024 at installation time because those ports are reserved for specific network services.

After the Operations Center is installed, the web server listens on the specified port for requests from web browsers. If users are unable to open the Operations Center because the port is blocked by a firewall, an administrator must open the port to allow browsers to connect. In some production environments, it might be more efficient to use system port 443. Because this system port is reserved for secure web browsing, it is likely already an open port in the firewall. Although you cannot specify port 443 at installation time, you can specify this port after installation.

Procedure

To configure the Operations Center web server to use port 443, complete the following steps after you install the Operations Center:

1. Stop the Operations Center web server.
For instructions about stopping the web server, see [“Starting and stopping the web server”](#) on page 160.
2. Go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:

```
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
```
3. Open the `bootstrap.properties` file, which contains a property that specifies the port that the Operations Center web server uses for secure communication.
4. Update the `tsm.https.port` property to specify port 443:

```
tsm.https.port=443
```

5. Save and close the `bootstrap.properties` file.
6. Start the Operations Center web server.

You must start the Operations Center as the root user. If you do not start the Operations Center as the root user, the Operations Center cannot communicate over port 443.

For instructions about starting the Operations Center web server, see [“Starting and stopping the web server”](#) on page 160.

What to do next

Notify users that the Operations Center is using the standard TCP/IP secure port. Typically, a user opens the Operations Center in their browser by including the port number in the URL. Because port 443 is the default for secure web browser communication, users do not have to specify the port number in the URL.

Instead, the following URL can be used, where *hostname* specifies the name of the computer where the Operations Center is installed:

```
https://hostname/oc/
```

For instructions about opening the Operations Center, see [“Opening the Operations Center” on page 160](#).

Enabling REST services

Applications that use Representational State Transfer (REST) services can query and manage the storage environment by connecting to the Operations Center.

About this task

Enable this feature to allow REST services to interact with hub and spoke servers by sending calls to the following address:


```
https://oc_host_name:port/oc/api
```

where *oc_host_name* is the network name or IP address of the Operations Center host system and *port* is the Operations Center port number. The default port number is 11090.

For information about the REST services that are available for the Operations Center, see Technote <http://www-01.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21997347>, or issue the following REST call:

```
https://oc_host_name:port/oc/api/help
```

Procedure

1. On the Operations Center menu bar, hover over the settings icon  and click **Settings**.
2. On the General page, select the **Enable administrative REST API** check box.
3. Click **Save**.

Configuring for secure communication

The Operations Center uses Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) to communicate with web browsers. The Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol secures communications between the Operations Center and the hub server, and between the hub server and associated spoke servers.

About this task

TLS version 1.2 is required for secure communication between the IBM Spectrum Protect server and the Operations Center, and between the hub server and spoke servers.

Securing communication between the Operations Center and the hub server

To secure communications between the Operations Center and the hub server, you must add the Transport Layer Security (TLS) certificate of the hub server to the truststore file of the Operations Center.

Before you begin

The truststore file of the Operations Center is a container for certificates that the Operations Center can access. The truststore file contains the certificate that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication with web browsers.

During the installation of the Operations Center, you create a password for the truststore file. To secure communication between the Operations Center and the hub server, you must use the same password to add the certificate of the hub server to the truststore file. If you do not remember this password, you can reset it. See [“Deleting and reassigning the password for the Operations Center truststore file” on page 158](#).

For information about the certificates that are needed to connect to the server, see [Configuring the server to accept SSL connections](#)

Procedure

1. Stop the Operations Center web server.
2. Go to the command line of the operating system on which the Operations Center is installed.
3. Add the certificate to the truststore file of the Operations Center by using the **iKeycmd** utility or the **iKeyman** utility.

The **iKeycmd** utility is a command line interface, and the **iKeyman** utility is the IBM Key Management graphical user interface.

The **iKeycmd** and the **iKeyman** utilities must be run as the root user.

To add the TLS certificate by using the command line interface, complete the following steps:

- a) Go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:
 - *installation_dir*/ui/jre/bin
- b) Issue the **iKeycmd** command to add the cert256.arm certificate as the default certificate in the key database file of the hub server:

```
ikeycmd -cert -add
-db /installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer/gui-truststore.jks
-file /server_instance_dir/cert256.arm
-label 'label description'
-pw 'password' -type jks -format ascii -trust enable
```

where:

installation_dir

The directory in which the Operations Center is installed.

server_instance_dir

The IBM Spectrum Protect server instance directory.

label description

The description that you assign to the label.

password

The password that you created when you installed the Operations Center. To reset the password, uninstall the Operations Center, delete the .jks file, and reinstall the Operations Center.

To add the certificate by using the **IBM Key Management** window, complete the following steps:

- a) Go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:
 - *installation_dir*/ui/jre/bin
- b) Open the **IBM Key Management** window by issuing the following command:

```
ikeyman
```

- c) Click **Key Database File > Open**.
- d) In the **Open** window, click **Browse**, and go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:
 - *installation_dir*/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
- e) In the guiServer directory, select the gui-truststore.jks file.
- f) Click **Open**, and click **OK**.
- g) Enter the password for the truststore file, and click **OK**.

- h) In the **Key database content** area of the **IBM Key Management** window, click the arrow, and select **Signer Certificates** from the list.
- i) Click **Add**.
- j) In the **Open** window, click **Browse**, and go to the hub server instance directory. This directory contains the `cert256.arm` certificate.

If you cannot access the hub server instance directory from the **Open** window, complete the following steps:

- 1) Use FTP or another file-transfer method to copy the `cert256.arm` files from the hub server to the following directory on the computer where the Operations Center is installed:

- `installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer`

- 2) In the **Open** window, go to the `guiServer` directory.

- k) Select the `cert256.arm` certificate as the certificate.

Tip: The certificate that you choose must be set as the default certificate in the key database file of the hub server.

- l) Click **Open**, and click **OK**.
- m) Enter a label for the certificate.
For example, enter the name of the hub server.
- n) Click **OK**.

The SSL certificate of the hub server is added to the truststore file, and the label is displayed in the **Key database content** area of the **IBM Key Management** window.

- o) Close the **IBM Key Management** window.

- 4. Start the Operations Center web server.

- 5. When you connect to the Operations Center for the first time, you are prompted to identify the IP address or network name of the hub server, and the port number for communicating with the hub server. Enter the port number that is specified by either the `TCPADMINPORT` or `SSLTCPADMINPORT` server option.

If the Operations Center was previously configured, you can review the contents of the `serverConnection.properties` file to verify the connection information. The `serverConnection.properties` file is in the following directory on the computer where the Operations Center is installed:

- `installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer`

What to do next

To set up TLS communication between the hub server and a spoke server, see [“Securing communication between the hub server and a spoke server”](#) on page 145.

Securing communication between the hub server and a spoke server

To secure communications between the hub server and a spoke server by using the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol, you must define the certificate of the spoke server to the hub server, and the certificate of the hub server to the spoke server. You must also configure the Operations Center to monitor the spoke server.

About this task

The hub server receives status and alert information from the spoke server and shows this information in the Operations Center. To receive the status and alert information from the spoke server, the certificate of the spoke server must be added to the truststore file of the hub server. You must also configure the Operations Center to monitor the spoke server.

To enable other functions of the Operations Center, such as the automatic deployment of client updates, the certificate of the hub server must be added to the truststore file of the spoke server.

Procedure

1. Complete the following steps to define the certificate of the spoke server to the hub server:
 - a) On the spoke server, change to the directory of the spoke server instance.
 - b) Verify the certificates in the key database file of the spoke server. Issue the following command:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -list -db cert.kdb -stashed
```

- c) Securely transfer the `cert256.arm` file of the spoke server to the hub server.
 - d) On the hub server, change to the directory of the hub server instance.
 - e) Define the spoke server certificate to the hub server. Issue the following command from the hub server instance directory, where *spoke_servername* is the name of the spoke server, and *spoke_cert256.arm* is the file name of the spoke server certificate:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -add -db cert.kdb -stashed -format ascii -trust enable  
-label spoke_servername -file spoke_cert256.arm
```

2. Complete the following steps to define the certificate of the hub server to the spoke server:
 - a) On the hub server, change to the directory of the hub server instance.
 - b) Verify the certificates in the key database file of the spoke server. Issue the following command:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -list -db cert.kdb -stashed
```

- c) Securely transfer the `cert256.arm` file of the hub server to the spoke server.
 - d) On the spoke server, change to the directory of the spoke server instance.
 - e) Define the hub server certificate to the spoke server. Issue the following command from the spoke server instance directory, where *hub_servername* is the name of the hub server, and *hub_cert256.arm* is the file name of the hub server certificate:

```
gsk8capicmd_64 -cert -add -db cert.kdb -stashed -format ascii -trust enable  
-label hub_servername -file hub_cert256.arm
```

3. Restart the hub server and the spoke server.
4. Complete the following steps to define the spoke server to the hub server, and the hub server to the spoke server.
 - a) Issue the following commands on both the hub server and the spoke server:

```
SET SERVERPASSWORD server_password  
SET SERVERHLADDRESS ip_address  
SET SERVERLLADDRESS tcp_port
```

- b) On the hub server, issue the **DEFINE SERVER** command, according to the following example:

```
DEFINE SERVER spoke_servername HLA=spoke_address  
LLA=spoke_SSLTCPADMINPort SERVERPA=spoke_serverpassword
```

- c) On the spoke server, issue the **DEFINE SERVER** command, according to the following example:

```
DEFINE SERVER hub_servername HLA=hub_address  
LLA=hub_SSLTCPADMINPort SERVERPA=hub_serverpassword
```

Tip: By default, server communication is encrypted except when the server is sending or receiving object data. Object data is sent and received by using TCP/IP. By choosing not to encrypt the object data, server performance is similar to communication over a TCP/IP session and the session is secure. To encrypt all communication with the specified server, even when the server is sending and receiving object data, specify the `SSL=YES` parameter on the **DEFINE SERVER** command.

5. Complete the following steps to configure the Operations Center to monitor the spoke server:
 - a) On the Operations Center menu bar, click **Servers**.

The spoke server has a status of "Unmonitored." This status means that, although this server was defined to the hub server by using the **DEFINE SERVER** command, the server is not yet configured as a spoke.

- b) Click the spoke server to highlight the item, and click **Monitor Spoke**.

Configuring SSL communication between the Operations Center and web browsers

During the installation of the Operations Center, a self-signed digital certificate is generated and is then used for web browser sessions. You can optionally use a certificate that is signed by a third-party certificate authority instead of the self-signed certificate.

About this task

The Operations Center always uses the HTTPS protocol to communicate with web browsers. All communication between your browser and the Operations Center is encrypted by using version 1.2 of the TLS protocol.

By default, the self-signed certificate is used to create the secure connection between the browser and the Operations Center. Because the certificate is a self-signed certificate, the web browser is unable to verify the identity of the server and displays a warning. Self-signed certificates are commonly used for intranet web sites, where the danger of an intercepted connection and an impersonated server might not be considered a serious threat. You can bypass the browser's security warning and use the self-signed certificate, or you can replace the self-signed certificate with a certificate from a trusted certificate authority (CA).

To use the self-signed certificate, no further configuration is necessary.

To use a certificate that is signed by a CA, you must complete multiple steps.

Procedure

1. Create a certificate signing request.
2. Send the certificate signing request to the certificate authority for signing.
3. Add the certificate to the truststore file of the Operations Center.

Creating a certificate signing request

To get a certificate that is signed by a third party, you must create a certificate signing request (CSR) to send to the CA.

Before you begin

The truststore file of the Operations Center is a container for SSL/TLS certificates that the Operations Center can access. The truststore file contains the certificate that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication with web browsers.

During the installation of the Operations Center, you create a password for the truststore file. To work with the truststore file, you must know the truststore password. If you do not remember this password, follow the instructions in ["Deleting and reassigning the password for the Operations Center truststore file"](#) on page 158.

Procedure

To create a CSR, complete the following steps:

1. From the command line, change the directory to the keystore location:
`installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer`
2. Create a certificate request by using the **ikeyman** command or the **ikeycmd** command. The **ikeyman** command opens the IBM Key Management graphical user interface, and **ikeycmd** is a command-line interface.

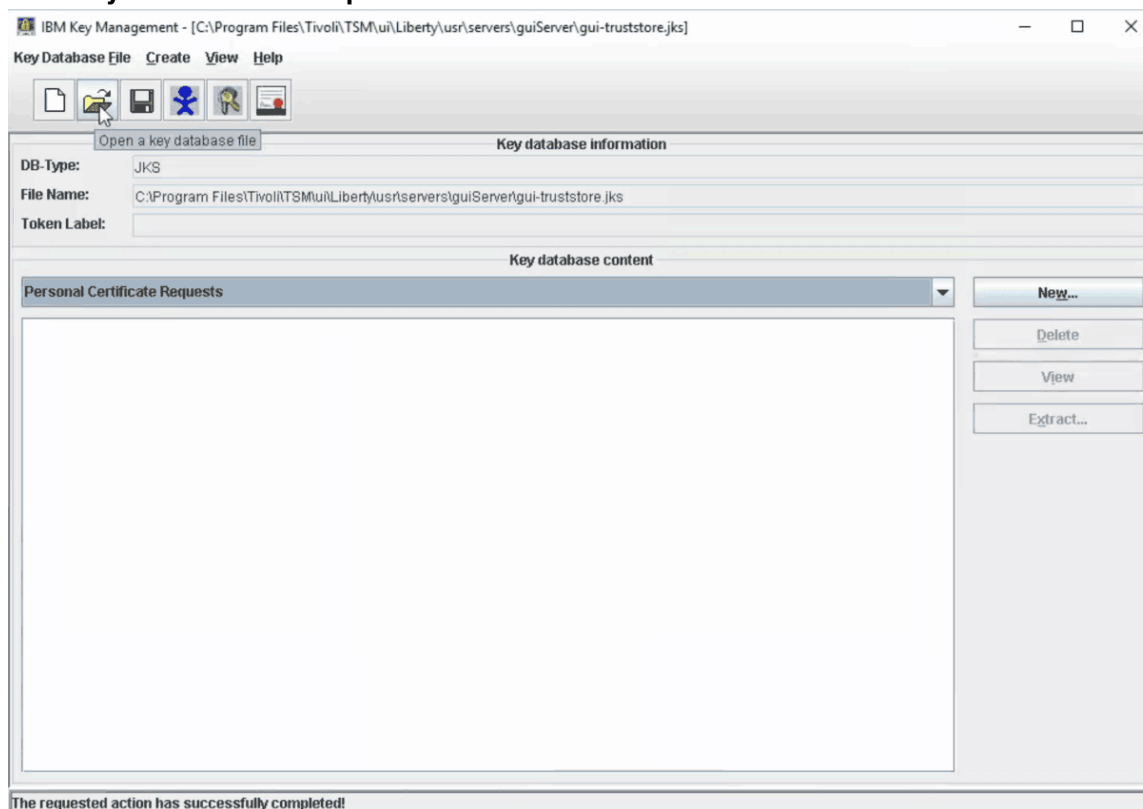
Tip: You might have to specify the full path to the **ikeyman** or **ikeycmd** command. The commands are located in the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:

installation_dir/ui/jre/bin

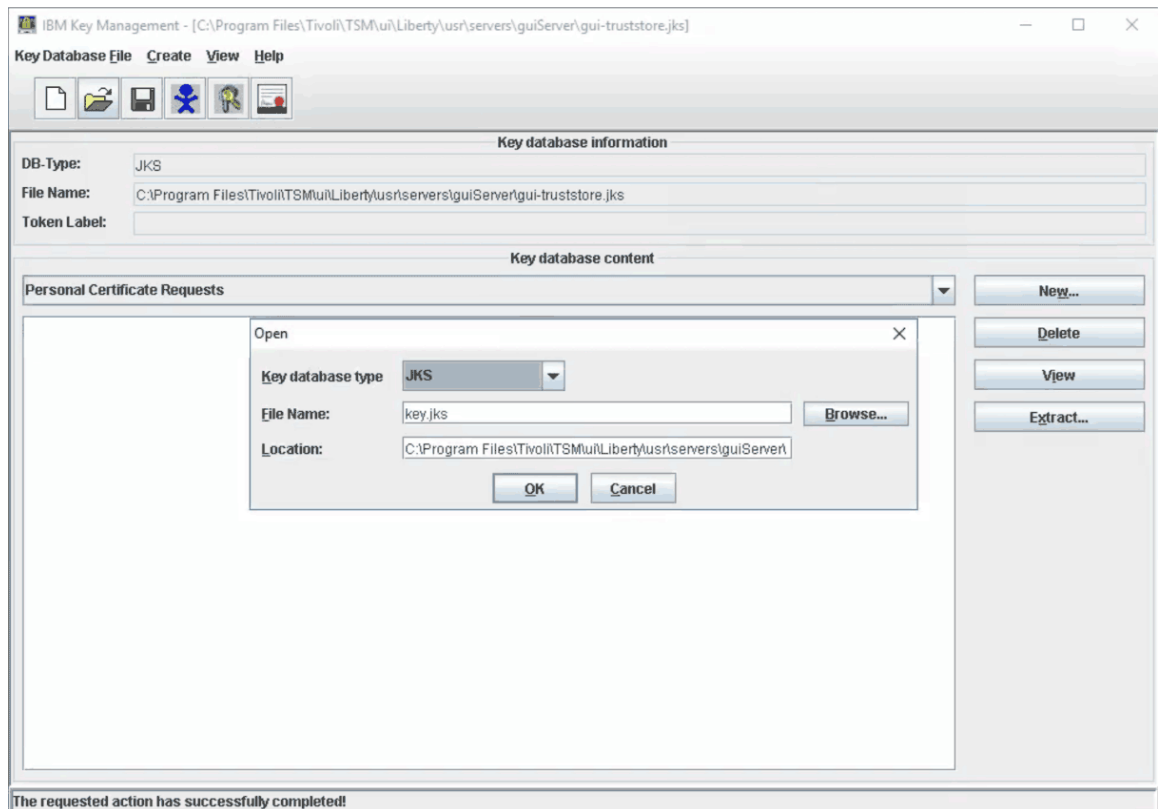
- To create a certificate request by using the **ikeyman** graphical user interface, complete the following steps:
 - a. Open the IBM Key Management tool by issuing the following command:

```
ikeyman
```

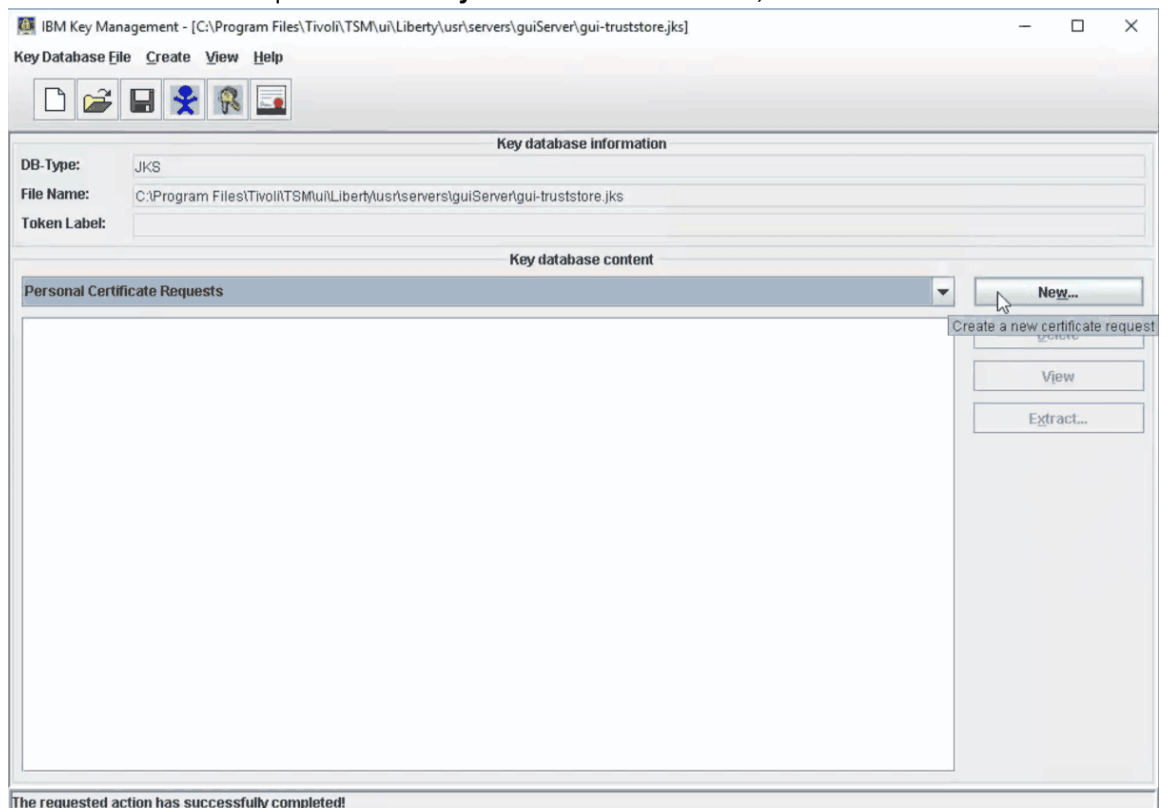
- b. Click **Key Database File > Open**.



In the **Open** window, click **Browse** to open the directory and select the `gui-truststore.jks` file. Click **OK**.



c. Create a certificate request. In the **Key database content** area, click **New**.



d. In the Create New Key and Certificate Request dialog box, complete the fields as required by the CA and your organization. Specify the following information:

Key Label

Specify a unique label for the certificate in the truststore file. The label name, for example, *usr-cert-name*, identifies the certificate in the truststore.

Key Size

Select a key size of at least 2048 bits.

Signature Algorithm

Select **SHA256WithRSA**.

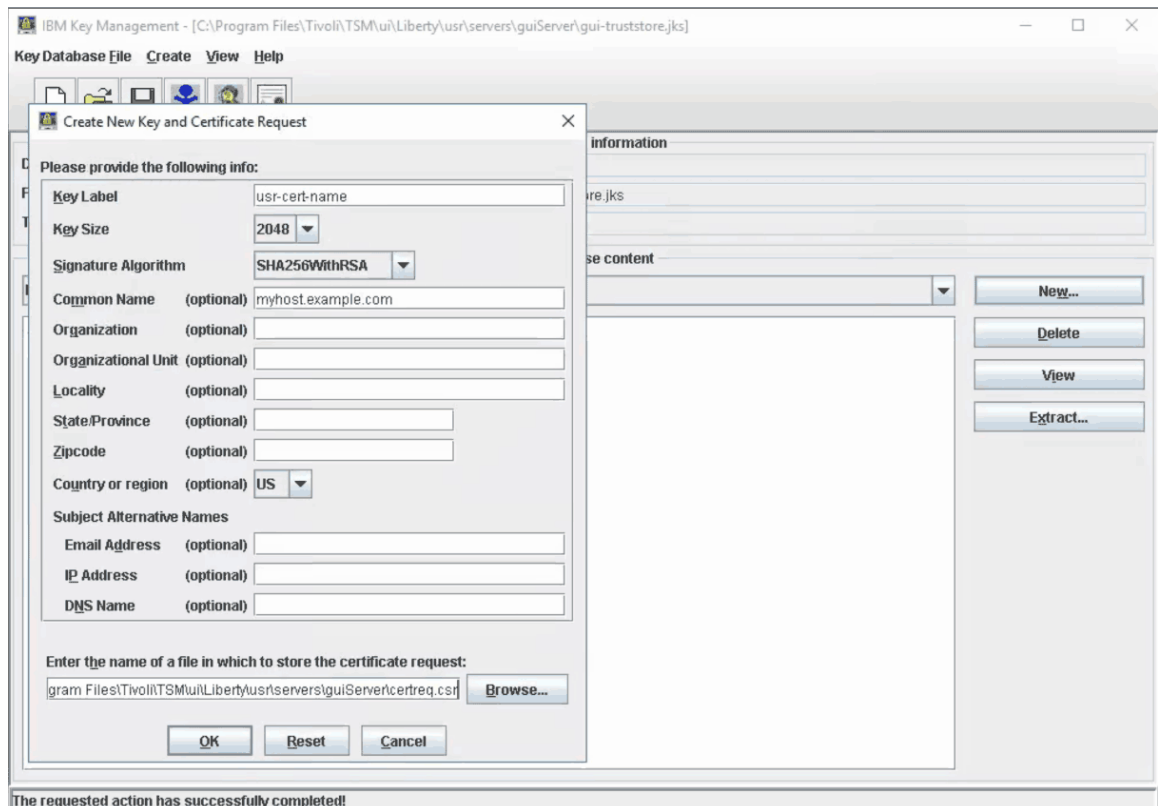
Common Name

Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the system on the network where the Operations Center is installed.

Remember: The FQDN for the system on your network is used in the URL for the Operations Center on your system. The URL is used by a web browser to access the Operations Center.

Enter the name of a file in which to store the certificate request

Specify a file that is named *certreq.csr* in the *guiServer* directory.



e. Close the **Open** window.

- To create a certificate request by using the **ikeycmd** command, issue the following command:

```
ikeycmd -certreq -create -db gui-truststore.jks -size 2048
-sig_alg SHA256WithRSA -dn "CN=myhost.example.com" -file certreq.csr -label usr-cert-name
-san_dnsname myhost.example.com,myhost
-san_ipaddr 192.0.2.1,192.0.2.2
```

where:

-dn "CN=myhost.example.com"

Specifies the distinguished name. Input as a quoted string that contains the specification *CN=myhost.example.com*, where *myhost.example.com* specifies the FQDN of the system on the network where the Operations Center is installed.

Remember: The FQDN for the system on your network is used in the URL for the Operations Center on your system. The URL is used by a web browser to access the Operations Center.

-label *usr-cert-name*

Specifies a unique label, *usr-cert-name*, for the certificate in the truststore file.

-san_dnsname *myhost.example.com,myhost* (Optional)

Specifies the domain name server (DNS) names of the system where the Operations Center is installed. The CN and dnsname are typically the same value.

-san_ipaddr *192.0.2.1,192.0.2.2* (Optional)

Specifies the IP address of the system where the Operations Center is installed.

Sending the certificate signing request to the certificate authority

After you create the certificate request file (*certreq.csr*), you must send it to the CA for signing. Follow the instructions from the CA.

Receiving the signed certificate

The CA must send you the certificate file to add to the truststore file.

Procedure

To receive the signed certificate, complete the following steps:

1. From the command line, change the directory to the keystore location:
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
2. Copy the files that you received from the CA to this location. These files include the CA root certificate, intermediate CA certificates (if any), and the signed certificate for the Operations Center.
3. Stop the Operations Center web server as described in [“Starting and stopping the web server” on page 160](#).
4. Make a backup copy of the Operations Center truststore in case you must revert to the original truststore. The Operations Center truststore is named *gui-truststore.jks*.
5. To complete the steps to receive the signed certificate, use one of the following commands:
 - **ikeyman** command: Complete the steps in [“Receiving the signed certificate by using IBM Key Management” on page 151](#).
 - **ikeycmd** command: Complete the steps in [“Receiving the signed certificate by using ikeycmd” on page 157](#).

Receiving the signed certificate by using IBM Key Management

You can use a graphical user interface, the IBM Key Management tool, to manage the certificate keys and receive the signed certificate.

Procedure

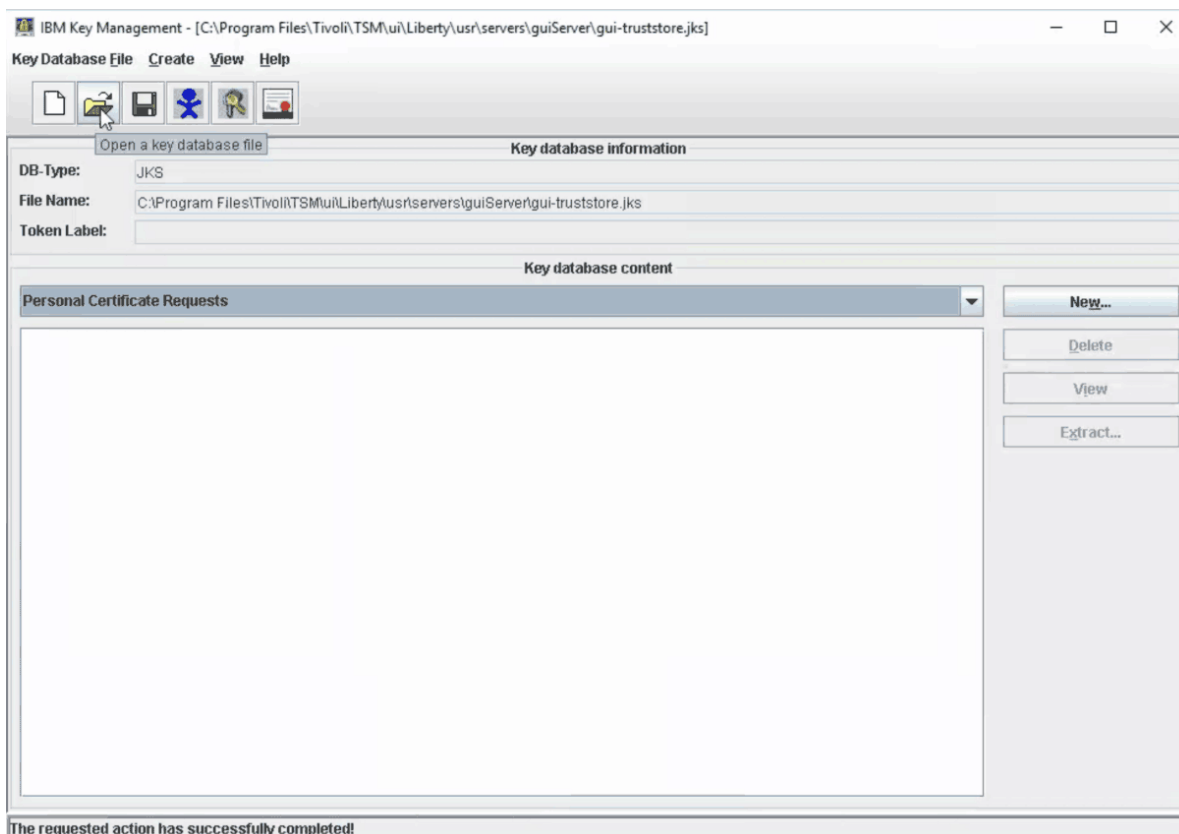
1. Verify that the Personal Signed Certificate is in the appropriate directory by using the **ikeyman** command. Complete the following steps:
 - a) Open the IBM Key Management tool by issuing the following command:

```
ikeyman
```

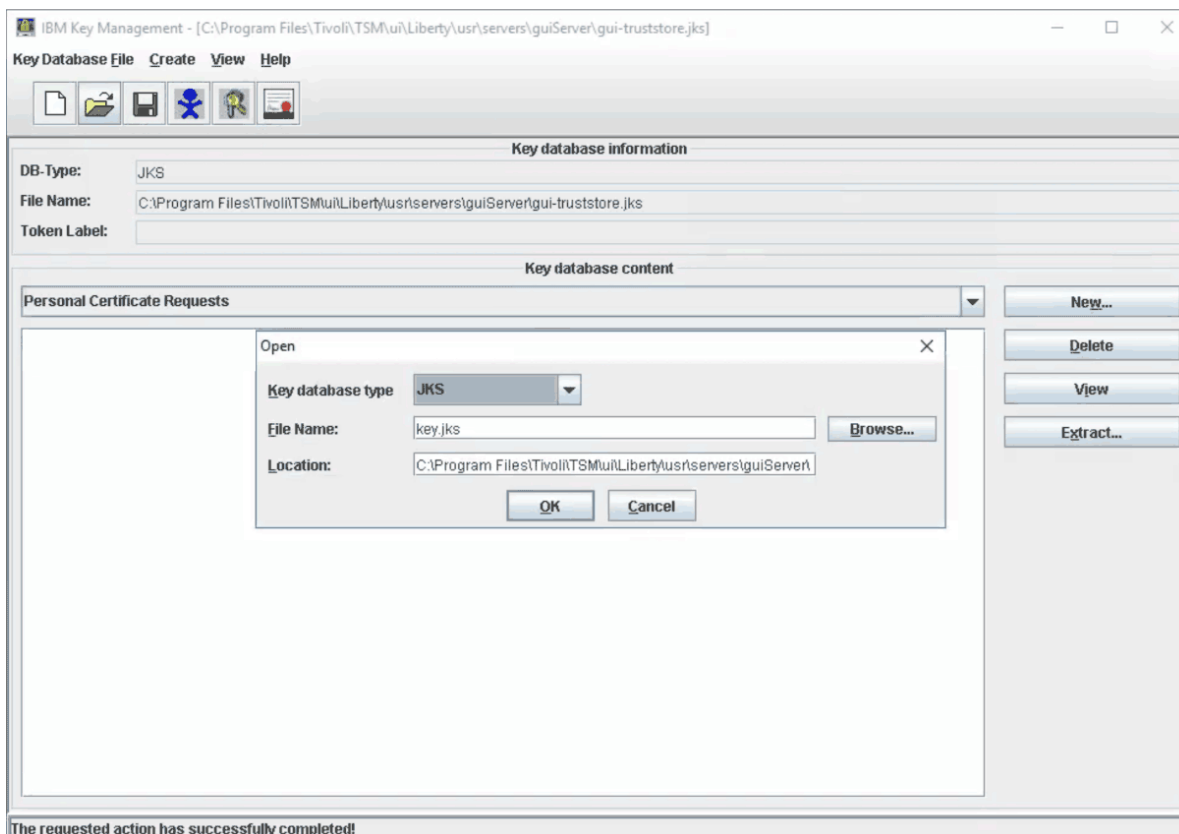
Tip: You might have to specify the full path to the **ikeyman** command. The commands are located in the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:

```
installation_dir/ui/jre/bin
```

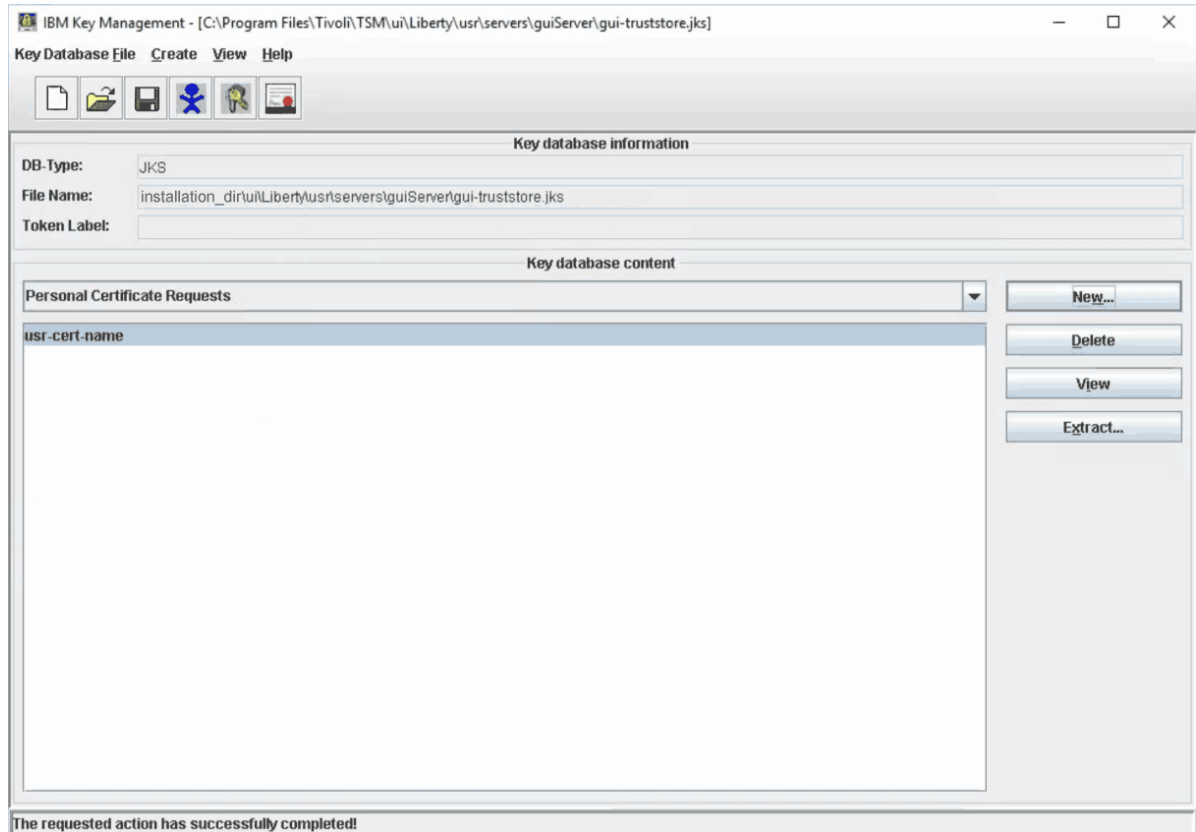
- b) Click **Key Database File > Open**.



In the **Open** dialog box, click **Browse** to open the directory and select the `gui-truststore.jks` file. Click **OK**.



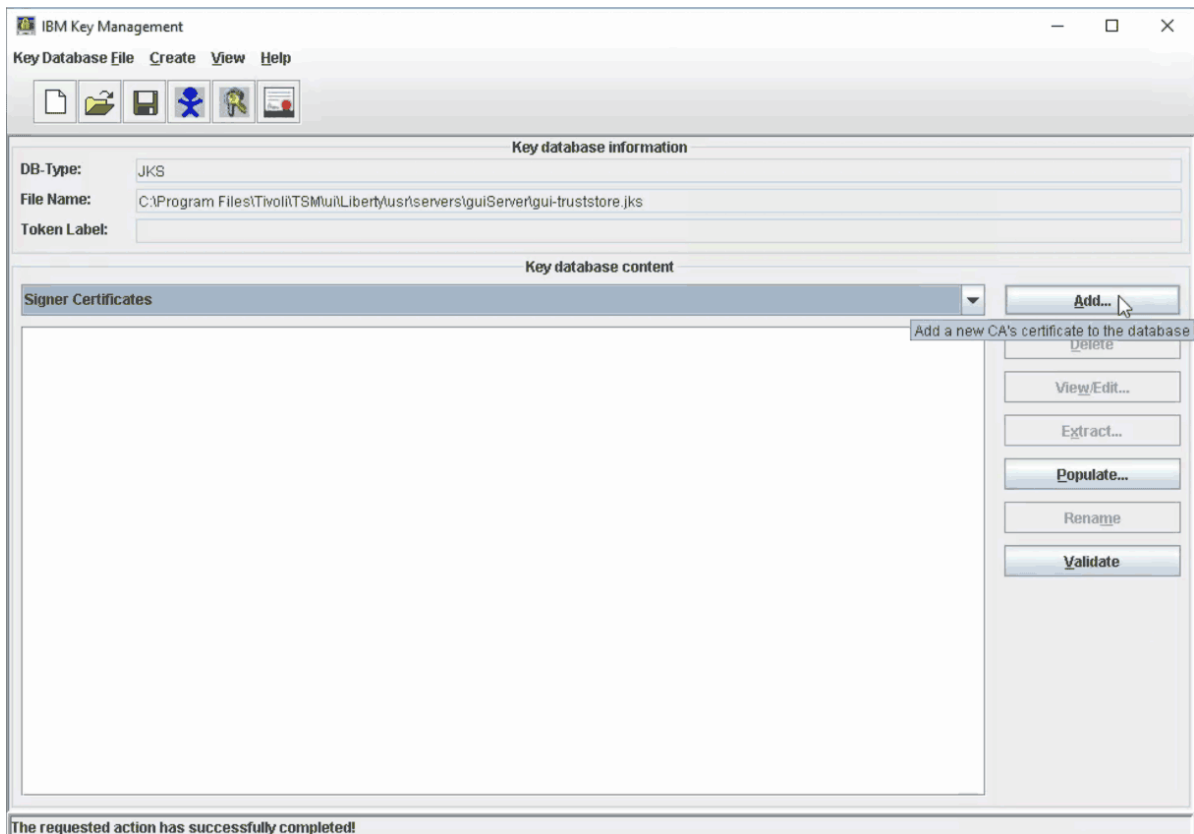
- c) In the **Key database content** area, select **Personal Certificate Requests**, and confirm that the **usr-cert-name** label is displayed.



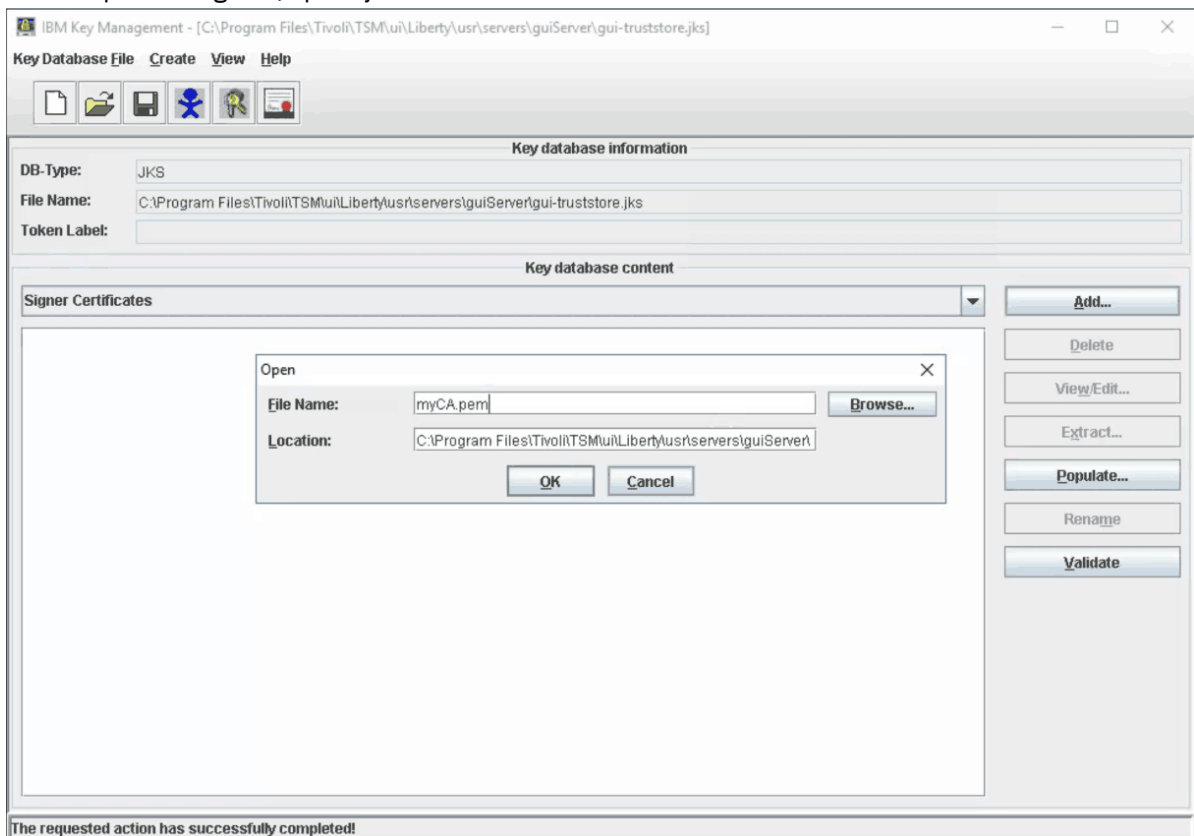
2. Add the CA root certificate and any intermediate certificates to the truststore file. If you received intermediate certificates from the CA, you must add each one to the truststore file before you add the CA root certificate. Complete the following steps for each intermediate certificate and the CA root certificate.

Important: The CA sends one root certificate, the signed certificate, and possibly one or more intermediate certificates. Depending on the CA, the certificate file might be one file or multiple files. If you receive the certificate file as one file, you must extract the certificates as separate files. Contact your CA if you are unsure how to extract the certificates.

- a) In the **Key database content** area, select **Signer Certificates**, and click **Add**.

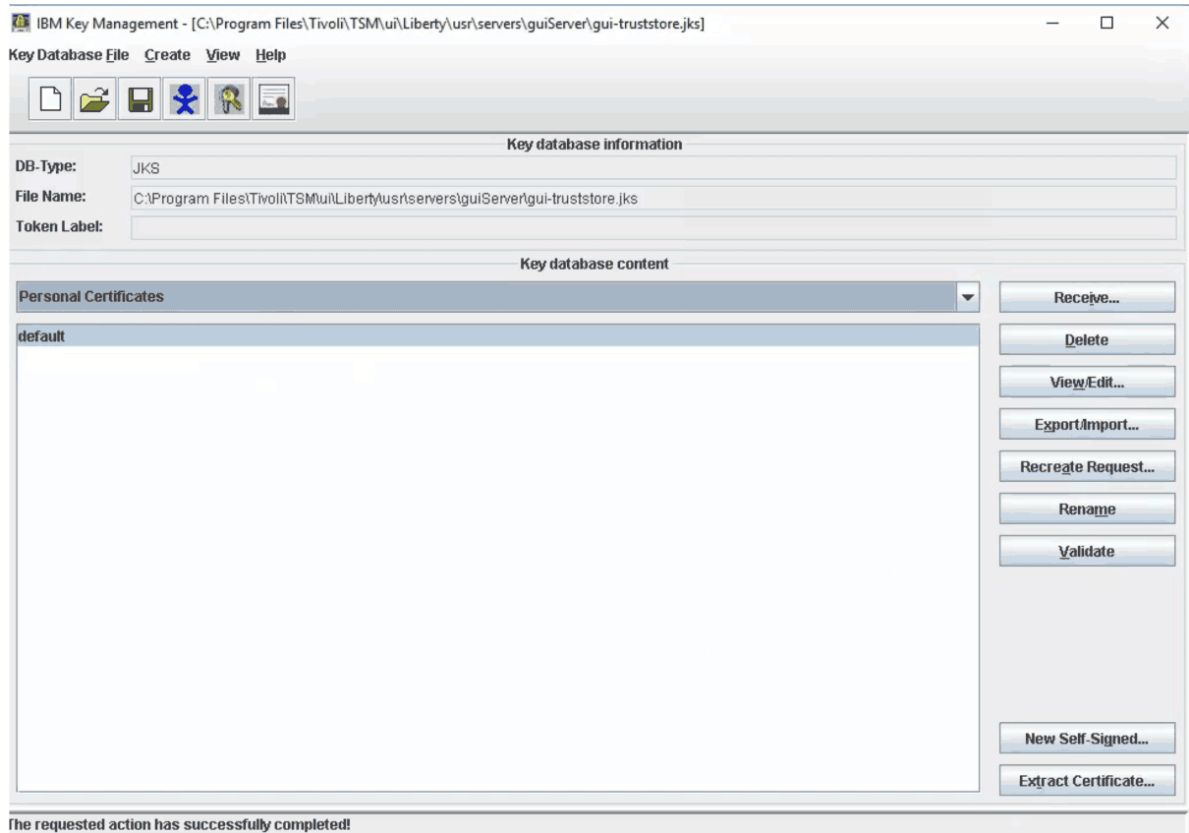


- b) In the Open dialog box, specify the CA root certificate or the intermediate certificate and click **OK**.

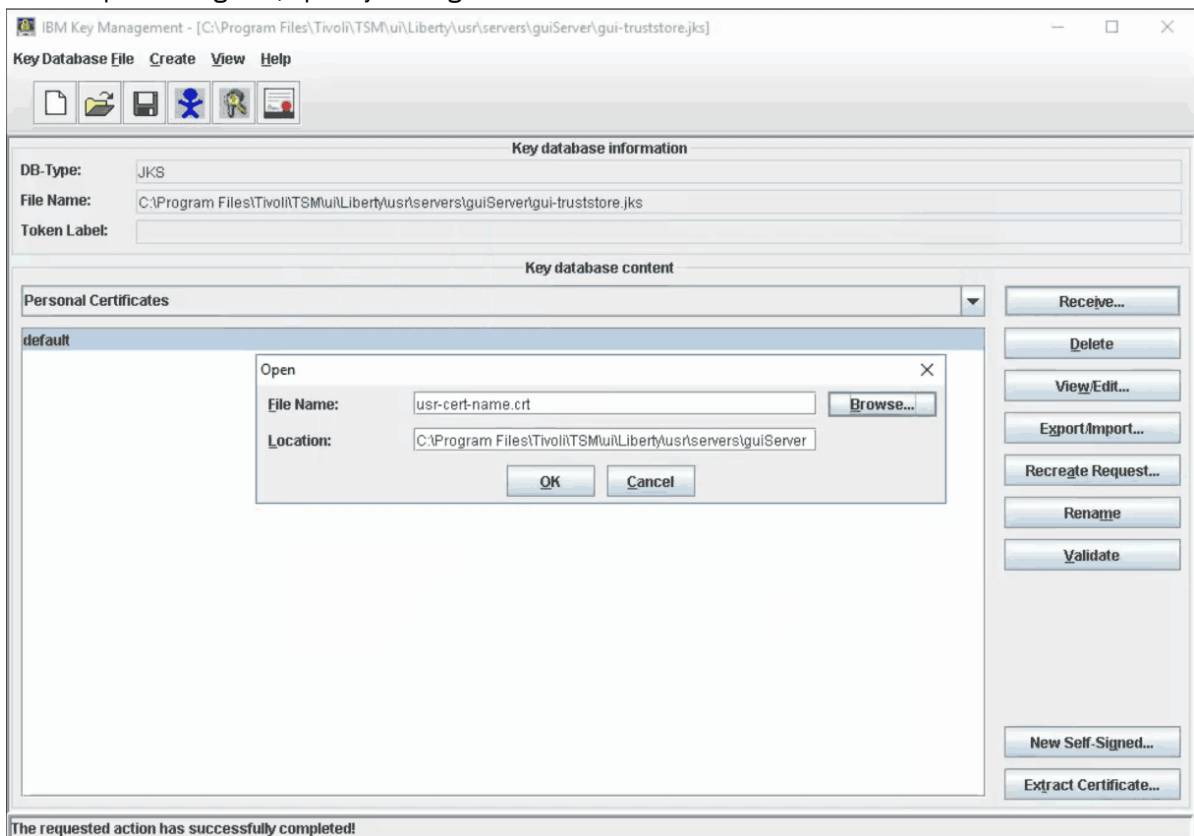


3. Receive the signed certificate by completing the following steps:

- a) In the **Key database content** area, select **Personal Certificates**, and click **Receive**.



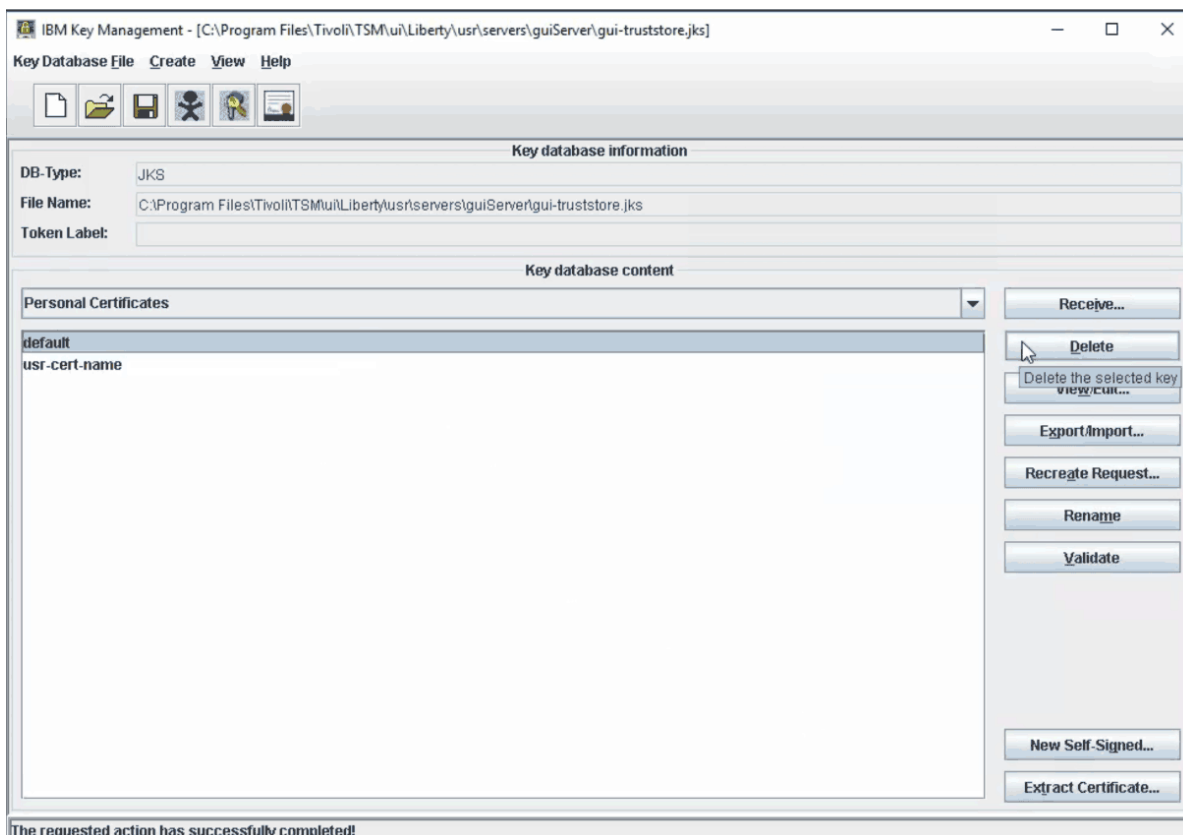
b) In the Open dialog box, specify the signed certificate and click **OK**.



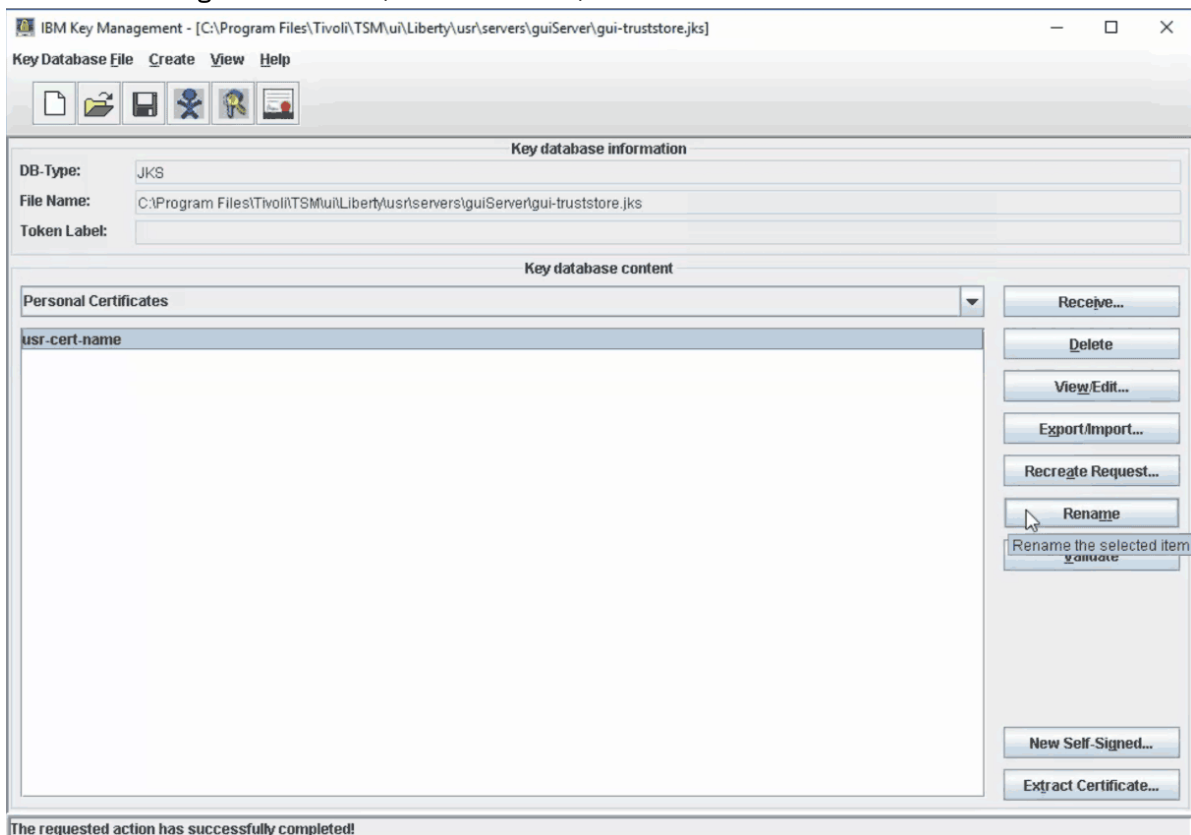
4. Delete the self-signed certificate that is currently used by the Operations Center, and replace it with the CA-signed certificate, by completing the following steps:

a) In the **Key database content** area, select **Personal Certificates**.

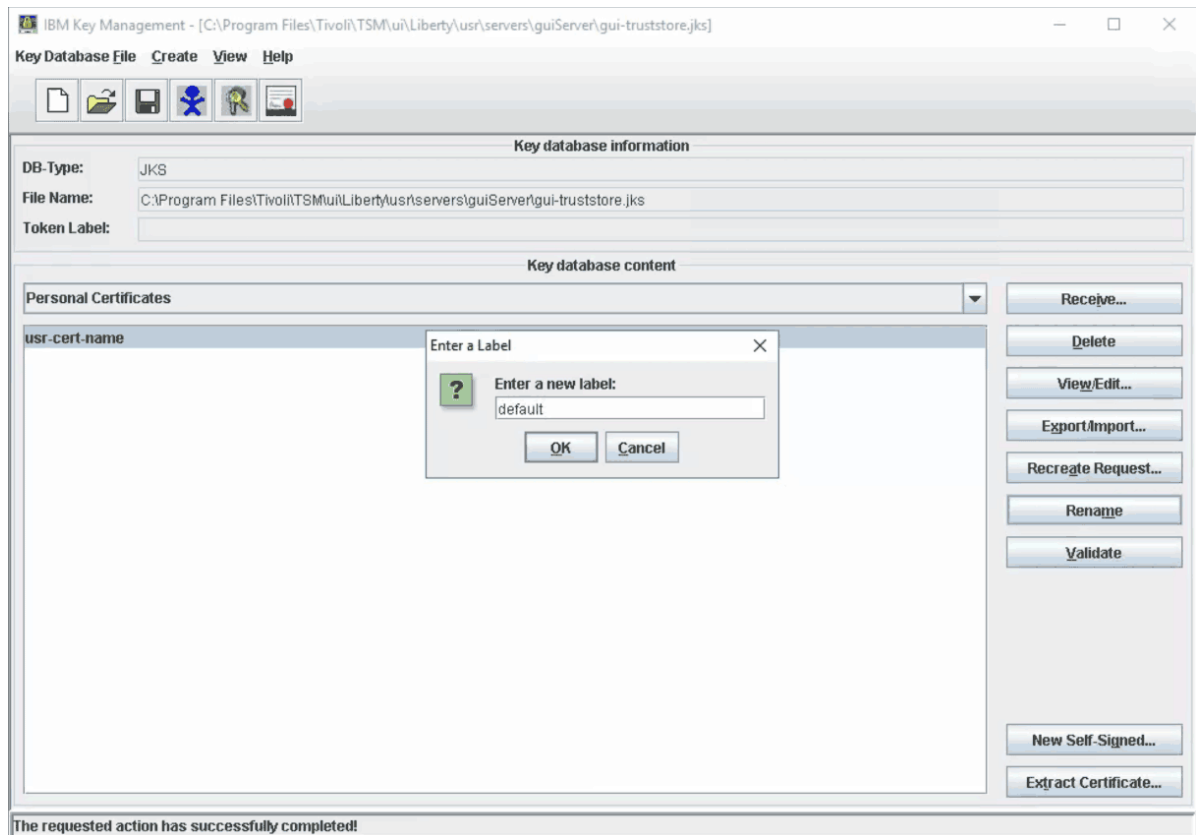
- b) Select the certificate that is labeled **default**, and click **Delete**. Click **Yes** in the confirmation dialog box.



- c) Select the CA-signed certificate, **usr-cert-name**, and click **Rename**.



- d) In the Rename dialog box, rename the signed certificate (usr-cert-name) to default, and click **OK**.



5. Validate the default certificate by completing the following steps:
 - a) In the **Key database content** area, select **Personal Certificates**.
 - b) Select the certificate that is labeled **default**, and click **Validate**. Click **OK** in the confirmation dialog box.
6. Start the Operations Center web server as described in [“Starting and stopping the web server”](#) on page 160.

Receiving the signed certificate by using `ikeycmd`

You can use the **ikeycmd** command, which opens a command-line, to manage certificate keys and receive signed certificates.

Procedure

1. Verify that the Personal Signed Certificate is in the appropriate directory by using the **ikeycmd** command. Complete the following steps:
 - a) Issue the following command:

```
ikeycmd -certreq -list -db gui-truststore.jks
```

Tip: You might have to specify the full path to the **ikeycmd** command. The commands are located in the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:

```
installation_dir/ui/jre/bin
```

- b) A message displays the name of the Personal Signed Certificate, `usr-cert-name`, that is in the truststore file.

2. Add the CA root certificate and any intermediate certificates to the truststore file by issuing the following commands. If you received intermediate certificates from the CA, you must add them to the truststore file before you add the CA root certificate.

```
ikeycmd -cert -add -db gui-truststore.jks  
-file intermediate_certificate_file
```

```
ikeycmd -cert -add -db gui-truststore.jks  
-file root_certificate_file
```

where:

-file *certificate_file*

Specifies the name of the file that contains the certificate.

3. Receive the signed certificate by issuing the following command:

```
ikeycmd -cert -receive -db gui-truststore.jks  
-file signer_certificate_file
```

where:

-file *signer_certificate_file*

Specifies the name of the file that contains the signed certificate.

4. Delete the self-signed certificate that is currently used by the Operations Center, and replace it with the CA-signed certificate, by completing the following steps:

- a) To delete the existing self-signed certificate, issue the following command:

```
ikeycmd -cert -delete -db gui-truststore.jks -label default
```

- b) To rename the CA-signed certificate, *usr-cert-name*, to default, issue the following command:

```
ikeycmd -cert -rename -db gui-truststore.jks -label usr-cert-name  
-new_label default
```

where:

-label *usr-cert-name*

Identifies the CA-signed certificate by its label.

5. Validate the default certificate by issuing the following command:

```
ikeycmd -cert -validate -db gui-truststore.jks -label default
```

6. Start the Operations Center web server by following the instructions in [“Starting and stopping the web server”](#) on page 160.

Deleting and reassigning the password for the Operations Center truststore file

To set up secure communication between the Operations Center and the hub server, you must know the password for the truststore file of the Operations Center. You create this password during the installation of the Operations Center. If you do not know the password, you can delete the password and assign a new password.

About this task

To assign a new password, you must create a password, delete the truststore file of the Operations Center, and restart the Operations Center web server.



Attention:

If you forget the truststore password, you must get a new signed certificate from the CA. For more information, see [“Receiving the signed certificate”](#) on page 151.

Complete these steps only if you do not know the truststore password. Do not complete these steps if you know the truststore password and want to change it. To delete and reassign password, you must delete the truststore file, which deletes all certificates that are stored in the truststore

file. If you know the truststore password, you can change it by using the **ikeycmd** or the **ikeyman** utility.

Procedure

1. Stop the Operations Center web server.
2. Go to the following directory, where *installation_dir* represents the directory in which the Operations Center is installed:

```
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
```

3. Open the `bootstrap.properties` file, which contains the password for the truststore file.

If the password is unencrypted, you can use it to open the truststore file without having to reassign the password.

The following examples indicate the difference between an encrypted and an unencrypted password:

Encrypted password example

Encrypted passwords begin with the text string `{xor}`.

The following example shows an encrypted password as the value of the **tsm.truststore.pswd** parameter:

```
tsm.truststore.pswd={xor}MiYPPiwsKDAtOw==
```

Unencrypted password example

The following example shows an unencrypted password as the value of the **tsm.truststore.pswd** parameter:

```
tsm.truststore.pswd=J8b%^B
```

4. Replace the password in the `bootstrap.properties` file with a new password.

You can replace the password with an encrypted or unencrypted password. Remember the unencrypted password for future use.

To create an encrypted password, complete the following steps:

- a. Create an unencrypted password.

The password for the truststore file must meet the following criteria:

- The password must contain a minimum of 6 characters and a maximum of 64 characters.
- The password must contain at least the following characters:
 - One uppercase letter (A – Z)
 - One lowercase letter (a – z)
 - One digit (0 – 9)
 - Two of the non-alphanumeric characters that are listed in the following series:

```
~ @ # $ % ^ & * _ - + = ` |
```

```
( ) { } [ ] : ; < > , . ? /
```

- b. From the command line of the operating system, go to the following directory:

```
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/bin
```

- c. To encrypt the password, issue the following command, where *myPassword* represents the unencrypted password:

```
securityUtility encode myPassword --encoding=aes
```

5. Save the `bootstrap.properties` file.
6. Go to the following directory:

```
installation_dir/ui/Liberty/usr/servers/guiServer
```

7. Delete the `gui-truststore.jks` file, which is the truststore file of the Operations Center.
8. Start the Operations Center web server.

For information on starting the Operations Center web server, see [“Starting and stopping the web server”](#) on page 160.

Results

A new truststore file is automatically created for the Operations Center, and the TLS certificate of the Operations Center is automatically included in the truststore file.

Starting and stopping the web server

The web server of the Operations Center runs as a service and starts automatically. You might need to stop and start the web server, for example, to make configuration changes.

Procedure

Stop and start the web server.

- Issue the following commands:

- To stop the server:

```
service opscenter.rc stop
```

- To start the server:

```
service opscenter.rc start
```

- To restart the server:

```
service opscenter.rc restart
```

To determine whether the server is running, issue the following command:

```
service opscenter.rc status
```

Opening the Operations Center

The **Overview** page is the default initial view in the Operations Center. However, in your web browser, you can bookmark the page that you want to open when you log in to the Operations Center.

Procedure

1. In a web browser, enter the following address, where *hostname* represents the name of the computer where the Operations Center is installed, and *secure_port* represents the port number that the Operations Center uses for HTTPS communication on that computer:

```
https://hostname:secure_port/oc
```

Tips:

- The URL is case-sensitive. For example, ensure that you type "oc" in lowercase as indicated.
- The default port number for HTTPS communication is 11090, but a different port number in the range 1024 - 65535 can be specified during Operations Center installation. After installation, an administrator can configure the Operations Center to use the standard TCP/IP secure port (port 443) for HTTPS communication. If the Operations Center is configured to use port 443, then you do not need to include the secure port number when you open the Operations Center. Instead, you can

enter the following address, where *hostname* represents the name of the computer where the Operations Center is installed:

```
https://hostname/oc/
```

For more information about configuring the Operations Center to use port 443, see [“Configuring the Operations Center web server to use the standard TCP/IP secure port” on page 142.](#)

2. Log in, using an administrator ID that is registered on the hub server.

In the **Overview** page, you can view summary information for clients, services, servers, storage pools, and storage devices. You can view more details by clicking items or by using the Operations Center menu bar.

Monitoring from a mobile device: To remotely monitor the storage environment, you can view the **Overview** page of the Operations Center in the web browser of a mobile device. The Operations Center supports the Apple Safari web browser on the iPad. Other mobile devices can also be used.

Collecting diagnostic information with IBM Spectrum Protect client management services

The client management service collects diagnostic information about backup-archive clients and makes the information available to the Operations Center for basic monitoring capability.

About this task

After you install the client management service, you can view the **Diagnosis** page in the Operations Center to obtain troubleshooting information for backup-archive clients.

Diagnostic information can be collected only from Linux and Windows clients, but administrators can view the diagnostic information in the Operations Center on AIX, Linux, or Windows operating systems.

You can also install the client management service on data mover nodes for IBM Spectrum Protect for Virtual Environments: Data Protection for VMware to collect diagnostic information about the data movers.

Tip: In the documentation for the client management service, *client system* is the system where the backup-archive client is installed.

Installing the client management service by using a graphical wizard

To collect diagnostic information about backup-archive clients such as client log files, you must install the client management service on the client systems that you manage.

Before you begin

Review [“Requirements and limitations for IBM Spectrum Protect client management services” on page 124.](#)

About this task

You must install the client management service on the same computer as the backup-archive client.

Procedure

1. Download the installation package for the client management service from an IBM download site such as IBM Passport Advantage or IBM Fix Central. Look for a file name that is similar to `<version>-IBM-SPCMS-<operating system>.bin`.

The following table shows the names of the installation packages.

| Client operating system | Installation package name |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Linux x86 64-bit | 8.1.x.000-IBM-SPCMS-Linuxx64.bin |

| Client operating system | Installation package name |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Windows 32-bit | 8.1.x.000-IBM-SPCMS-Windows32.exe |
| Windows 64-bit | 8.1.x.000-IBM-SPCMS-Windows64.exe |

2. Create a directory on the client system that you want to manage, and copy the installation package there.

3. Extract the contents of the installation package file.

- On Linux client systems, complete the following steps:

a. Change the file to an executable file by issuing the following command:

```
chmod +x 8.1.x.000-IBM-SPCMS-Linuxx64.bin
```

b. Issue the following command:

```
./8.1.x.000-IBM-SPCMS-Linuxx64.bin
```

- On Windows client systems, double-click the installation package name in Windows Explorer.

Tip: If you previously installed and uninstalled the package, select **All** when prompted to replace the existing installation files.

4. Run the installation batch file from the directory where you extracted the installation files and associated files. This is the directory that you created in step “2” on page 162.

- On Linux client systems, issue the following command:

```
./install.sh
```

- On Windows client systems, double-click **install.bat**.

5. To install the client management service, follow the instructions in the IBM Installation Manager wizard.

If IBM Installation Manager is not already installed on the client system, you must select both **IBM Installation Manager** and **IBM Spectrum Protect Client Management Services**.

Tip: You can accept the default locations for the shared resources directory and the installation directory for IBM Installation Manager.

What to do next

Verify the installation.

Installing the client management service in silent mode

You can install the client management service in silent mode. When you use silent mode, you provide the installation values in a response file and then run an installation command.

Before you begin

Review “[Requirements and limitations for IBM Spectrum Protect client management services](#)” on page 124.

Extract the installation package by following the instructions in “[Installing the client management service by using a graphical wizard](#)” on page 161.

About this task

You must install the client management service on the same computer as the backup-archive client.

The input directory, which is in the directory where the installation package is extracted, contains the following sample response file:

install_response_sample.xml

You can use the sample file with the default values, or you can customize it.

Tip: If you want to customize the sample file, create a copy of the sample file, rename it, and edit the copy.

Procedure

1. Create a response file based on the sample file, or use the sample file, `install_response_sample.xml`.

In either case, ensure that the response file specifies the port number for the client management service. The default port is 9028. For example:

```
<variable name='port' value='9028' />
```

2. Run the command to install the client management service and accept the license. From the directory where the installation package file is extracted, issue the following command, where *response_file* represents the response file path, including the file name:

On a Linux client system:

```
./install.sh -s -input response_file -acceptLicense
```

For example:

```
./install.sh -s -input /cms_install/input/install_response.xml  
-acceptLicense
```

On a Windows client system:

```
install.bat -s -input response_file -acceptLicense
```

For example:

```
install.bat -s -input c:\cms_install\input\install_response.xml -acceptLicense
```

What to do next

Verify the installation.

Verifying that the client management service is installed correctly

Before you use the client management service to collect diagnostic information about a backup-archive client, you can verify that the client management service is correctly installed and configured.

Procedure

On the client system, at the command line, run the following commands to view the configuration of the client management service:

- On Linux client systems, issue the following command:

```
client_install_dir/cms/bin/CmsConfig.sh list
```

where *client_install_dir* is the directory where the backup-archive client is installed. For example, with the default client installation, issue the following command:

```
/opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin/CmsConfig.sh list
```

The output is similar to the following text:

```
Listing CMS configuration
```

```
server1.example.com:1500 NO_SSL HOSTNAME
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
  Opt Path: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.sys

  Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmerror.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

  Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmsched.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252
```

- On Windows client systems, issue the following command:

```
client_install_dir\cms\bin\CmsConfig.bat list
```

where *client_install_dir* is the directory where the backup-archive client is installed. For example, with the default client installation, issue the following command:

```
C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin\CmsConfig.bat list
```

The output is similar to the following text:

```
Listing CMS configuration

server1.example.com:1500 NO_SSL HOSTNAME
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
  Opt Path: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm.opt

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmerror.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmsched.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252
```

If the client management service is correctly installed and configured, the output displays the location of the error log file.

The output text is extracted from the following configuration file:

- On Linux client systems:

```
client_install_dir/cms/Liberty/usr/servers/cmsServer/client-configuration.xml
```

- On Windows client systems:

```
client_install_dir\cms\Liberty\usr\servers\cmsServer\client-configuration.xml
```

If the output does not contain any entries, you must configure the `client-configuration.xml` file. For instructions about how to configure this file, see [Configure the client management service for custom configurations](#). You can use the **CmsConfig verify** command to verify that a node definition is correctly created in the `client-configuration.xml` file.

Configuring the Operations Center to use the client management service

If you did not use the default configuration for the client management service, you must configure the Operations Center to access the client management service.

Before you begin

Ensure that the client management service is installed and started on the client system.

Verify whether the default configuration is used. The default configuration is not used if either of the following conditions is met:

- The client management service does not use the default port number, 9028.
- The backup-archive client is not accessed by the same IP address as the client system where the backup-archive client is installed. For example, a different IP address might be used in the following situations:

- The computer system has two network cards. The backup-archive client is configured to communicate on one network, while the client management service communicates on the other network.
- The client system is configured with the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). As a result, the client system is dynamically assigned an IP address, which is saved on the IBM Spectrum Protect server during the previous backup-archive client operation. When the client system is restarted, the client system might be assigned a different IP address. To ensure that the Operations Center can always find the client system, you specify a fully qualified domain name.

Procedure

To configure the Operations Center to use the client management service, complete the following steps:

1. On the **Clients** page of the Operations Center, select the client.
2. Click **Details**.
3. Click the **Properties** tab.
4. In the **Remote diagnostics URL** field in the **General** section, specify the URL for the client management service on the client system.

The address must start with `https`. The following table shows examples of the remote diagnostics URL.

| Type of URL | Example |
|---|--|
| With DNS host name and default port, 9028 | <code>https://server.example.com</code> |
| With DNS host name and non-default port | <code>https://server.example.com:1599</code> |
| With IP address and non-default port | <code>https://192.0.2.0:1599</code> |

5. Click **Save**.

What to do next

You can access client diagnostic information such as client log files from the **Diagnosis** tab in the Operations Center.

Starting and stopping the client management service

The client management service is automatically started after it is installed on the client system. You might need to stop and start the service in certain situations.

Procedure

- To stop, start, or restart the client management service on Linux client systems, issue the following commands:

- To stop the service:

```
service cms.rc stop
```

- To start the service:

```
service cms.rc start
```

- To restart the service:

```
service cms.rc restart
```

- On Windows client systems, open the **Services** window, and stop, start, or restart the IBM Spectrum Protect Client Management Services service.

Uninstalling the client management service

If you no longer have to collect client diagnostic information, you can uninstall the client management service from the client system.

About this task

You must use IBM Installation Manager to uninstall the client management service. If you no longer plan to use IBM Installation Manager, you can also uninstall it.

Procedure

1. Uninstall the client management service from the client system:
 - a) Open IBM Installation Manager:
 - On the Linux client system, in the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the `eclipse` subdirectory (for example, `/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse`), and issue the following command:

```
./IBMIM
```
 - On the Windows client system, open IBM Installation Manager from the **Start** menu.
 - b) Click **Uninstall**.
 - c) Select **IBM Spectrum Protect Client Management Services**, and click **Next**.
 - d) Click **Uninstall**, and then click **Finish**.
 - e) Close the **IBM Installation Manager** window.
2. If you no longer require IBM Installation Manager, uninstall it from the client system:
 - a) Open the IBM Installation Manager uninstall wizard:
 - On the Linux client system, change to the IBM Installation Manager uninstallation directory (for example, `/var/ibm/InstallationManager/uninstall`), and issue the following command:

```
./uninstall
```
 - On the Windows client system, click **Start** > **Control Panel**. Then, click **Uninstall a program** > **IBM Installation Manager** > **Uninstall**.
 - b) In the **IBM Installation Manager** window, select **IBM Installation Manager** if it is not already selected, and click **Next**.
 - c) Click **Uninstall**, and click **Finish**.

Configuring the client management service for custom client installations

The client management service uses information in the client configuration file (`client-configuration.xml`) to discover diagnostic information. If the client management service is unable to discover the location of log files, you must run the **CmsConfig** utility to add the location of the log files to the `client-configuration.xml` file.

CmsConfig utility

If you are not using the default client configuration, you can run the **CmsConfig** utility on the client system to discover and add the location of the client log files to the `client-configuration.xml` file. After you complete the configuration, the client management service can access the client log files and make them available for basic diagnostic functions in the Operations Center.

You can also use the **CmsConfig** utility to show the configuration of the client management service and to remove a node name from the `client-configuration.xml` file.

The `client-configuration.xml` file is in the following directory:

- On Linux client systems:

```
client_install_dir/cms/Liberty/usr/servers/cmsServer
```


- On Windows client systems:

```
client_install_dir\cms\Liberty\usr\servers\cmsServer
```

where *client_install_dir* is the directory where the backup-archive client is installed.

The **CmsConfig** utility is available in the following locations.

| Client operating system | Utility location and name |
|-------------------------|--|
| Linux | <i>client_install_dir</i> /cms/bin/ CmsConfig.sh |
| Windows | <i>client_install_dir</i> \cms\bin \CmsConfig.bat |

To use the **CmsConfig** utility, issue any command that is included in the utility. Ensure that you enter each command on a single line.

CmsConfig discover command

You can use the **CmsConfig discover** command to automatically discover options files and log files, and add them to the client configuration file, *client-configuration.xml*. In this way, you can help to ensure that the client management service can access the client log files and make them available for diagnosis in the Operations Center.


Typically, the client management service installer runs the **CmsConfig discover** command automatically. However, you must run this command manually if you changed the backup-archive client, such as added a client, or changed the server configuration or location of log files.

For the client management service to create a log definition in the *client-configuration.xml* file, the IBM Spectrum Protect server address, server port, and client node name must be obtained. If the node name is not defined in the client options file (typically, *dsm.sys* on Linux client systems and *dsm.opt* on Windows client systems), the host name of the client system is used.

To update the client configuration file, the client management service must access one or more log files, such as *dsmerror.log* and *dsm sched.log*. For best results, run the **CmsConfig discover** command in the same directory and by using the same environment variables as you would for the backup-archive client command, **dsmsc**. In this way, you can improve the chances of finding the correct log files.

If the client options file is in a custom location or it does not have a typical options file name, you can also specify the path for the client options file to narrow the scope of the discovery.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig discover 

Parameters

configPath

The path of the client options file (typically *dsm.opt*). Specify the configuration path when the client options file is not in a default location or it does not have the default name. The client management service loads the client options file and discovers the client nodes and logs from there. This parameter is optional.

On a Linux client system, the client management service always loads the client user-options file (*dsm.opt*) first, and then looks for the client system-options file (typically *dsm.sys*). The value of the *configPath* parameter, however, is always the client user-options file.

Examples for a Linux client system

- Discover the client log files and automatically add the log definitions to the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh discover
```

Output:

```
Discovering client configuration and logs.
server.example.com:1500 SUSAN
/opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmerror.log
Finished discovering client configuration and logs.
```

- Discover the configuration files and log files that are specified in the /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/daily.opt file and automatically add the log definitions to the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh discover /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/daily.opt
```

Output:

```
Discovering client configuration and logs
server.example.com:1500 NO_SSL SUSAN
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
Opt Path: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.sys

Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmerror.log
en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmsched.log
en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

Finished discovering client configuration and logs.
```

Examples for a Windows client system

- Discover the client log files and automatically add the log definitions to the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig discover
```

Output:

```
Discovering client configuration and logs.
server.example.com:1500 SUSAN
C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmerror.log
Finished discovering client configuration and logs.
```

- Discover the configuration files and log files that are specified in the c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\daily.opt file and automatically add the log definitions to the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig discover "c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\daily.opt"
```

Output:

```

Discovering client configuration and logs

server.example.com:1500 NO_SSL SUSAN
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
  Opt Path: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm.opt

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmererror.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmsched.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

Finished discovering client configuration and logs.

```

CmsConfig addnode command

Use the **CmsConfig addnode** command to manually add a client node definition to the `client-configuration.xml` configuration file. The node definition contains information that is required by the client management service to communicate with the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

Use this command only if the client options file or client log files are stored in a non-default location on the client system.

Syntax

```
➤ CmsConfig addnode — nodeName — serverIP — serverPort — serverProtocol — optPath ➤
```

Parameters***nodeName***

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users, such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

serverIP

The TCP/IP address of the IBM Spectrum Protect server that the client management service authenticates to. This parameter is required.

You can specify a 1 - 64 character TCP/IP address for the server. The server address can be a TCP/IP domain name or a numeric IP address. The numeric IP address can be either a TCP/IP v4 or TCP/IP v6 address. You can use IPv6 addresses only if the **commethod V6Tcpip** option is specified for the client system.

Examples:

- server.example.com
- 192.0.2.0
- 2001:0DB8:0:0:0:0:0:0

serverPort

The TCP/IP port number that is used to communicate with the IBM Spectrum Protect server. You can specify a value in the range 1 - 32767. This parameter is required.

Example: 1500

serverProtocol

The protocol that is used for communication between the client management service and the IBM Spectrum Protect server. This parameter is required.

You can specify one of the following values.

| Value | Meaning |
|--------|---|
| NO_SSL | The SSL security protocol is not used. |
| SSL | The SSL security protocol is used. |
| FIPS | The TLS 1.2 protocol is used in Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) mode. Tip: Alternatively, you can enter TLS_1.2 to specify that the TLS 1.2 protocol is used in FIPS mode. |

optPath

The fully qualified path of the client options file. This parameter is required.

Example (Linux client): /opt/backup_tools/tivoli/tsm/baclient/dsm.sys

Example (Windows client): C:\backup tools\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm.opt

Example for a Linux client system

Add the node definition for client node SUSAN to the `client-configuration.xml` file. The IBM Spectrum Protect server that the node communicates with is `server.example.com` on server port 1500. The SSL security protocol is not used. The path for the client system options file is /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/custom_opt.sys.

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh addnode SUSAN server.example.com 1500 NO_SSL /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/custom_opt.sys
```

Output:

```
Adding node.
Finished adding client configuration.
```

Example for a Windows client system

Add the node definition for client node SUSAN to the `client-configuration.xml` file. The IBM Spectrum Protect server that the node communicates with is `server.example.com` on server port 1500. The SSL security protocol is not used. The path for the client options file is `c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\custom.opt`.

Issue the following command. from the `C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin` directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig addnode SUSAN server.example.com 1500 NO_SSL "c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\custom.opt"
```

Output:

```
Adding node.
Finished adding client configuration.
```

CmsConfig setopt command

Use the **CmsConfig setopt** command to set the path of the client options file (typically `dsm.opt`) to an existing node definition without first reading the contents of the client options file.

This command can be helpful if the client options file does not have a typical name or is in a non-default location.

Requirement: If the node definition does not exist, you must first issue the **CmsConfig addnode** command to create the node definition.

Unlike the **CmsConfig discover** command, the **CmsConfig setopt** command does not create associated log definitions in the `client-configuration.xml` file. You must use the **CmsComfog addlog** command to create the log definitions.

Syntax

```
➤ CmsConfig setopt — nodeName — optPath ➤
```

Parameters

nodeName

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users, such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

optPath

The fully qualified path of the client options file. This parameter is required.

Example (Linux client): `/opt/backup_tools/tivoli/tsm/baclient/dsm.opt`

Example (Windows client): `C:\backup_tools\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm.opt`

Example for a Linux client system

Set the client options file path for the node SUSAN. The path for the client options file is `/opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.opt`.

Issue the following command from the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin` directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh setopt SUSAN /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.opt
```

Output:

```
Adding node configuration file.
Finished adding client configuration file.
```

Example for a Windows client system

Set the client options file path for the node SUSAN. The path for the client options file is `c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\dsm.opt`.

Issue the following command from the `C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin` directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig setopt SUSAN "c:\program files\tivoli\tsm\baclient\dsm.opt"
```

Output:

```
Adding node configuration file.
Finished adding client configuration file.
```

CmsConfig setsys command

On a Linux client system, use the **CmsConfig setsys** command to set the path of the client system-options file (typically `dsm.sys`) to an existing node definition without first reading the contents of the client system-options file.

This command can be helpful if the client system-options file does not have a typical name or is in a non-default location.

Requirement: If the node definition does not exist, you must first issue the **CmsConfig addnode** command to create the node definition.

Unlike the **CmsConfig discover** command, the **CmsConfig setsys** command does not create associated log definitions in the `client-configuration.xml` file. You must use the **CmsComfog addlog** command to create the log definitions.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig setsys — *nodeName* — *sysPath* ►►

Parameters

nodeName

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users, such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

sysPath

The fully qualified path of the client system-options file. This parameter is required.

Example: `/opt/backup_tools/tivoli/tsm/baclient/dsm.sys`

Example

Set the client system-options file path for the node SUSAN. The path for the client system-options file is `/opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.sys`.

Issue the following command, from the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin` directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh setopt SUSAN /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.sys
```

Output:

```
Adding node configuration file.
Finished adding client configuration file.
```

CmsConfig addlog command

Use the **CmsConfig addlog** command to manually add the location of client log files to an existing node definition in the `client-configuration.xml` configuration file. Use this command only if the client log files are stored in a non-default location on the client system.

Requirement: If the node definition does not exist, you must first issue the **CmsConfig addnode** command to create the node definition.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig addlog — *nodeName* — *logPath* ►

└─ *language* — *dateFormat* — *timeFormat* — *encoding* ─┘

Parameters

nodeName

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users,

such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

logPath

The fully qualified path of the log files. This parameter is required.

Example (Linux client): /opt/backup_tools/tivoli/tsm/baclient/dsmerror.log

Example (Windows client): C:\backup_tools\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmerror.log

language

The language locale of the log file. This parameter is optional. However, if you specify this parameter, you must also specify the **dateFormat**, **timeFormat**, and **encoding** parameters. You must specify the locale for the following languages.

| Language | Locale |
|----------------------|--------|
| Brazilian Portuguese | pt_BR |
| Chinese, Simplified | zh_CN |
| Chinese, Traditional | zh_TW |
| Czech | cs_CZ |
| English | en_US |
| French | fr_FR |
| German | de_DE |
| Hungarian | hu_HU |
| Italian | it_IT |
| Japanese | ja_JP |
| Korean | ko_KR |
| Polish | pl_PL |
| Russian | ru_RU |
| Spanish | es_ES |

dateFormat

The date format of the time stamp entries in the client log file. This parameter is optional. However, if you specify this parameter, you must also specify the **language**, **timeFormat**, and **encoding** parameters.

The following table shows the date formats for the languages.

Tip: Instead of using one of the date formats that are listed in the table, you can specify a date format by using the backup-archive client **dateFormat** option.

| Language | Date format |
|----------------------|-------------|
| Chinese, Simplified | yyyy-MM-dd |
| Chinese, Traditional | yyyy/MM/dd |
| Czech | dd.MM.yyyy |
| English | MM/dd/yyyy |
| French | dd/MM/yyyy |
| German | dd.MM.yyyy |

| Language | Date format |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| Hungarian | yyyy.MM.dd |
| Italian | dd/MM/yyyy |
| Japanese | yyyy-MM-dd |
| Korean | yyyy/MM/dd |
| Polish | yyyy-MM-dd |
| Portuguese, Brazilian | dd/MM/yyyy |
| Russian | dd.MM.yyyy |
| Spanish | dd.MM.yyyy |

timeFormat

The time format of the time stamp entries in the client log file. This parameter is optional. However, if you specify this parameter, you must also specify the **language**, **dateFormat**, and **encoding** parameters.

The following table shows examples of default time formats that you can specify and client operating systems.

Tip: Instead of using one of the time formats that are listed in the table, you can specify a time format by using the backup-archive client **timeformat** option.

| Language | Time format for Linux client systems | Time format for Windows client systems |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Chinese, Simplified | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Chinese, Traditional | HH:mm:ss | ahh:mm:ss |
| Czech | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| English | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| French | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| German | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Hungarian | HH.mm.ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Italian | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Japanese | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Korean | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Polish | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Portuguese, Brazilian | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Russian | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |
| Spanish | HH:mm:ss | HH:mm:ss |

encoding

The character encoding of the entries in the client log files. This parameter is optional. However, if you specify this parameter, you must also specify the **language**, **dateFormat**, and **timeFormat** parameters.

For Linux client systems, the typical character encoding is UTF-8. For Windows client systems, the default encoding values are shown in the following table. If your client system is customized differently, use the **encoding** parameter to specify a value other than the default.

| Language | Encoding |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| Chinese, Simplified | CP936 |
| Chinese, Traditional | CP950 |
| Czech | Windows-1250 |
| English | Windows-1252 |
| French | Windows-1252 |
| German | Windows-1252 |
| Hungarian | Windows-1250 |
| Italian | Windows-1252 |
| Japanese | CP932 |
| Korean | CP949 |
| Polish | Windows-1250 |
| Portuguese, Brazilian | Windows-1252 |
| Russian | Windows-1251 |
| Spanish | Windows-1252 |

Example for a Linux client system

Add the client log file location to the existing definition for client node SUSAN in the `client-configuration.xml` file. The path for the client log file is `/usr/work/logs/dsmerror.log`. Add the language specification, time format, and date format for the French locale.

Issue the following command from the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin` directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh addlog SUSAN /usr/work/logs/dsmerror.log fr_FR yyyy/MM/dd
HH:MM:ss UTF-8
```

Output:

```
Adding log.
Finished adding log.
```

Example for a Windows client system

Add the client log file location to the existing definition for client node SUSAN in the `client-configuration.xml`. The path for the client log file is `c:\work\logs\dsmerror.log`. Add the language specification, time format, and date format for the French locale.

Issue the following command from the `C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin` directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig addlog SUSAN c:\work\logs\dsmerror.log fr_FR yyyy/MM/dd HH:MM:ss
UTF-8
```

Output:

```
Adding log.
Finished adding log.
```

CmsConfig remove command

Use the **CmsConfig remove** command to remove a client node definition from the client configuration file, `client-configuration.xml`. All log file entries that are associated with the client node name are also removed.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig remove — *nodeName* ►◄

Parameters

nodeName

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users, such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

Example for a Linux client system

Remove the node definition for SUSAN from the `client-configuration.xml` file.

Issue the following command from the `/opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin` directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh remove SUSAN
```

Output:

```
Removing node.  
Finished removing node.
```

Example for a Windows client system

Remove the node definition for SUSAN from the `client-configuration.xml` file.

Issue the following command from the `C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin` directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig remove SUSAN
```

Output:

```
Removing node.  
Finished removing node.
```

CmsConfig verify command

Use the **CmsConfig verify** command to verify that a node definition is correctly created in the `client-configuration.xml` file. If there are errors with the node definition or the node is not correctly defined, you must correct the node definition by using the appropriate **CmsConfig** commands.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig verify — *nodeName* — *cmsPort* ►◄

Parameters

nodeName

The client node name that is associated with the log files. For most client systems, only one node name is registered to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. However, on systems with multiple users,

such as Linux client systems, there can be more than one client node name. This parameter is required.

cmsPort

The TCP/IP port number that is used to communicate with the client management service. Specify the port number if you did not use the default port number when you installed the client management service. The default port number is 9028. This parameter is optional.

Example for a Linux client system

Verify that the node definition for the node SUSAN is created correctly in the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh verify SUSAN
```

During the verification process, you are prompted to enter the client node name or administrative user ID and password.

Output:

```
Verifying node.

Verifying the CMS service configuration for node SUSAN.
The CMS configuration looks correct.

Verifying the CMS service works correctly on port 9028.

Enter your user id: admin
Enter your password:

Connecting to CMS service and verifying resources.
The CMS service is working correctly.
Finished verifying node.
```

Example for a Windows client system

Verify that the node definition for the node SUSAN is created correctly in the client-configuration.xml file.

Issue the following command from the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin directory.

Commands:

```
cmsconfig verify SUSAN
```

During the verification process, you are prompted to enter the client node name or administrative user ID and password.

Output:

```
Verifying node.

Verifying the CMS service configuration for node SUSAN.
The CMS configuration looks correct.

Verifying the CMS service works correctly on port 9028.

Enter your user id: admin
Enter your password:

Connecting to CMS service and verifying resources.
The CMS service is working correctly.
Finished verifying node.
```

CmsConfig list command

Use the **CmsConfig list** command to show the client management service configuration.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig list ◄◄

Example for a Linux client system

Show the configuration of the client management service. Then, view the output to ensure that you entered the command correctly.

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory.

Command:

```
./CmsConfig.sh list
```

Output:

```
Listing CMS configuration
server.example.com:1500 NO_SSL SUSAN
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
  Opt Path: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsm.sys

  Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmerror.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

  Log File: /opt/tivoli/tsm/client/ba/bin/dsmsched.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252
```

Example for a Windows client system

Show the configuration of the client management service. Then, view the output to ensure that you entered the command correctly.

Issue the following command from the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin directory.

Command:

```
cmsconfig list
```

Output:

```
Listing CMS configuration
server.example.com:1500 NO_SSL SUSAN
Capabilities: [LOG_QUERY]
  Opt Path: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm.opt

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsmerror.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252

  Log File: C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\baclient\dsm Sched.log
             en_US MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss Windows-1252
```

CmsConfig help command

Use the **CmsConfig help** command to show the syntax of **CmsConfig** utility commands.

Syntax

►► CmsConfig help ◄◄

Example for a Linux client system

Issue the following command from the /opt/tivoli/tsm/cms/bin directory:

```
./CmsConfig help
```

Example for a Windows client system

Issue the following command from the C:\Program Files\Tivoli\TSM\cms\bin directory:

```
CmsConfig help
```

Advanced client management service capabilities

By default, the IBM Spectrum Protect client management service collects information only from client log files. To initiate other client actions, you can access the Representational State Transfer (REST) API that is included with the client management service.

API developers can create REST applications to initiate the following client actions:

- Query and update client options files (for example, the dsm.sys file on Linux clients and the dsm.opt file on Linux and Windows clients).
- Query the status of the IBM Spectrum Protect client acceptor and the scheduler.
- Back up and restore files for a client node.
- Extend the capabilities of the client management service with scripts.

For detailed information about the client management service REST API, see the [Client Management Services REST API Guide](#).

Chapter 12. Troubleshooting the Operations Center installation

If a problem occurs with the Operations Center installation and you cannot solve it, you can consult the descriptions of known problems for a possible solution.

Chinese, Japanese, or Korean fonts are displayed incorrectly

Chinese, Japanese, or Korean fonts are displayed incorrectly in the Operations Center on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.

Solution

Install the following font packages, which are available from Red Hat:

- fonts-chinese
- fonts-japanese
- fonts-korean

Chapter 13. Uninstalling the Operations Center

You can uninstall the Operations Center by using any of the following methods: a graphical wizard, the command line in console mode, or silent mode.

Uninstalling the Operations Center by using a graphical wizard

You can uninstall the Operations Center by using the graphical wizard of IBM Installation Manager.

Procedure

1. Open IBM Installation Manager.

In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the `eclipse` subdirectory (for example, `/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse`), and issue the following command:

```
./IBMIM
```

2. Click **Uninstall**.
3. Select the option for the Operations Center, and click **Next**.
4. Click **Uninstall**.
5. Click **Finish**.

Uninstalling the Operations Center in console mode

To uninstall the Operations Center by using the command line, you must run the uninstallation program of IBM Installation Manager from the command line with the parameter for console mode.

Procedure

1. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the following subdirectory:

```
eclipse/tools
```

For example:

```
/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
```

2. From the `tools` directory, issue the following command:

```
./imcl -c
```

3. To uninstall, enter 5.
4. Choose to uninstall from the IBM Spectrum Protect package group.
5. Enter N for Next.
6. Choose to uninstall the Operations Center package.
7. Enter N for Next.
8. Enter U for Uninstall.
9. Enter F for Finish.

Uninstalling the Operations Center in silent mode

To uninstall the Operations Center in silent mode, you must run the uninstallation program of IBM Installation Manager from the command line with the parameters for silent mode.

Before you begin

You can use a response file to provide data input to silently uninstall the Operations Center server. IBM Spectrum Protect includes a sample response file, `uninstall_response_sample.xml`, in the input

directory where the installation package is extracted. This file contains default values to help you avoid any unnecessary warnings.

To uninstall the Operations Center, leave `modify="false"` set for the Operations Center entry in the response file.

If you want to customize the response file, you can modify the options that are in the file. For information about response files, see [Response files](#).

Procedure

1. In the directory where IBM Installation Manager is installed, go to the following subdirectory:

```
eclipse/tools
```

For example:

```
/opt/IBM/InstallationManager/eclipse/tools
```

2. From the `tools` directory, issue the following command, where *response_file* represents the response file path, including the file name:

```
./imcl -input response_file -silent
```

The following command is an example:

```
./imcl -input /tmp/input/uninstall_response.xml -silent
```

Chapter 14. Rolling back to a previous version of the Operations Center

By default, IBM Installation Manager saves earlier versions of a package to roll back to if you experience a problem with later versions of updates, fixes, or packages.

Before you begin

The rollback function is available only after the Operations Center is updated.

About this task

When IBM Installation Manager rolls back a package to a previous version, the current version of the package files is uninstalled, and an earlier version is reinstalled.

To roll back to a previous version, IBM Installation Manager must access files for that version. By default, these files are saved during each successive installation. Because the number of saved files increases with each installed version, you might want to delete these files from your system on a regular schedule. However, if you delete the files, you cannot roll back to a previous version.

To delete saved files or to update your preference for saving these files in future installations, complete the following steps:

1. In IBM Installation Manager, click **File > Preferences**.
2. On the **Preferences** page, click **Files for Rollback**, and specify your preference.

Procedure

- To roll back to a previous version of the Operations Center, use the **Roll Back** function of IBM Installation Manager.

Appendix A. Installation log files

If you experience errors during installation, these errors are recorded in log files that are stored in the IBM Installation Manager logs directory.

You can view installation log files by clicking **File > View Log** from the Installation Manager tool. To collect these log files, click **Help > Export Data for Problem Analysis** from the Installation Manager tool.

Appendix B. Accessibility features for the IBM Spectrum Protect product family

Accessibility features assist users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology content successfully.

Overview

The IBM Spectrum Protect family of products includes the following major accessibility features:

- Keyboard-only operation
- Operations that use a screen reader

The IBM Spectrum Protect family of products uses the latest W3C Standard, [WAI-ARIA 1.0](http://www.w3.org/TR/wai-aria/) (www.w3.org/TR/wai-aria/), to ensure compliance with [US Section 508](http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/communications-and-it/about-the-section-508-standards/section-508-standards) (www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/communications-and-it/about-the-section-508-standards/section-508-standards) and [Web Content Accessibility Guidelines \(WCAG\) 2.0](http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG20/) (www.w3.org/TR/WCAG20/). To take advantage of accessibility features, use the latest release of your screen reader and the latest web browser that is supported by the product.

The product documentation in IBM Knowledge Center is enabled for accessibility. The accessibility features of IBM Knowledge Center are described in the [Accessibility](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/about/releasenotes.html?view=kc#accessibility) section of the IBM Knowledge Center help (www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/about/releasenotes.html?view=kc#accessibility).

Keyboard navigation

This product uses standard navigation keys.

Interface information

User interfaces do not have content that flashes 2 - 55 times per second.

Web user interfaces rely on cascading style sheets to render content properly and to provide a usable experience. The application provides an equivalent way for low-vision users to use system display settings, including high-contrast mode. You can control font size by using the device or web browser settings.

Web user interfaces include WAI-ARIA navigational landmarks that you can use to quickly navigate to functional areas in the application.

Vendor software

The IBM Spectrum Protect product family includes certain vendor software that is not covered under the IBM license agreement. IBM makes no representation about the accessibility features of these products. Contact the vendor for accessibility information about its products.

Related accessibility information

In addition to standard IBM help desk and support websites, IBM has a TTY telephone service for use by deaf or hard of hearing customers to access sales and support services:

TTY service
800-IBM-3383 (800-426-3383)
(within North America)

For more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility, see [IBM Accessibility](http://www.ibm.com/able) (www.ibm.com/able).

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan Ltd.
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US*

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

The performance data discussed herein is presented as derived under specific operating conditions. Actual results may vary.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work must include a copyright notice as follows: © (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. _enter the year or years_.

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com® are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at "Copyright and trademark information" at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

Linear Tape-Open, LTO, and Ultrium are trademarks of HP, IBM Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel and Itanium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

VMware, VMware vCenter Server, and VMware vSphere are registered trademarks or trademarks of VMware, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other jurisdictions.

Terms and conditions for product documentation

Permissions for the use of these publications are granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

Applicability

These terms and conditions are in addition to any terms of use for the IBM website.

Personal use

You may reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not distribute, display or make derivative work of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

Commercial use

You may reproduce, distribute and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

Rights

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or, as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You may not download, export or re-export this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Privacy policy considerations

IBM Software products, including software as a service solutions, ("Software Offerings") may use cookies or other technologies to collect product usage information, to help improve the end user experience, to tailor interactions with the end user, or for other purposes. In many cases no personally identifiable information is collected by the Software Offerings. Some of our Software Offerings can help enable you to collect personally identifiable information. If this Software Offering uses cookies to collect personally identifiable information, specific information about this offering's use of cookies is set forth below.

This Software Offering does not use cookies or other technologies to collect personally identifiable information.

If the configurations deployed for this Software Offering provide you as customer the ability to collect personally identifiable information from end users via cookies and other technologies, you should seek your own legal advice about any laws applicable to such data collection, including any requirements for notice and consent.

For more information about the use of various technologies, including cookies, for these purposes, see IBM's Privacy Policy at <http://www.ibm.com/privacy> and IBM's Online Privacy Statement at <http://www.ibm.com/privacy/details> in the section entitled "Cookies, Web Beacons and Other Technologies," and the "IBM Software Products and Software-as-a-Service Privacy Statement" at <http://www.ibm.com/software/info/product-privacy>.

Glossary

A glossary is available with terms and definitions for the IBM Spectrum Protect family of products.
See the [IBM Spectrum Protect glossary](#).

Index

A

- access rights
 - setting
 - before server startup [89](#)
- accessibility features [189](#)
- activating
 - server [89](#)
- active log
 - space requirements [55](#)
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- administrative commands
 - HALT [94](#)
 - REGISTER LICENSE [94](#)
- administrator ID [126](#)
- administrator password [126](#)
- alerts
 - sending by email [139](#)
- API [86](#)
- API configuration [86](#)
- archive failover log space
 - description [66](#)
- archive log
 - space requirements [55](#)
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- archive log directory [78](#)
- automatic starting, server [91](#)

B

- BACKUP DB command [86](#)
- backups
 - database [94](#)

C

- capacity planning
 - database space requirements
 - estimates based on number of files [52](#)
 - estimates based storage pool capacity [54](#)
 - starting size [52](#)
 - recovery log space requirements
 - active and archive logs [55](#)
 - active log mirror [66](#)
- client management service
 - add log file location [172](#)
 - add node definition [169](#)
 - advanced capabilities [179](#)
 - CmsConfig addlog [172](#)
 - CmsConfig addnode [169](#)
 - CmsConfig discover [167](#)
 - CmsConfig help [178](#)
 - CmsConfig list [178](#)
 - CmsConfig remove [176](#)
 - CmsConfig setopt [170](#)
 - CmsConfig setsys [171](#)
 - CmsConfig utility [166](#)

- client management service (*continued*)
 - collecting diagnostic information [161](#)
 - configuring for custom client installation [166](#)
 - configuring the Operations Center [164](#)
 - installing
 - in silent mode [162](#)
 - Operations Center
 - view client log files [161](#)
 - remove node name [176](#)
 - requirements and limitations [124](#)
 - REST API [179](#)
 - set client options file path [170](#)
 - set client system-options file path [171](#)
 - show configuration [178](#)
 - starting and stopping [165](#)
 - uninstalling [166](#)
 - verifying installation [163](#)
- client options
 - for shared memory communications [84](#)
- client-configuration.xml file [163](#), [166](#)
- clustered environment
 - upgrading server on Linux [107](#)
 - upgrading the server [107](#)
- CmsConfig utility
 - addlog [172](#)
 - addnode [169](#)
 - client management service [166](#)
 - discover [167](#)
 - help [178](#)
 - list [178](#)
 - remove [176](#)
 - setopt [170](#)
 - setsys [171](#)
- commands
 - administrative, SET DBRECOVERY [94](#)
 - DSMSERV FORMAT [84](#)
- commands, administrative
 - HALT [94](#)
 - REGISTER LICENSE [94](#)
- communication methods
 - Shared Memory [84](#)
 - TCP/IP [83](#)
- compatibility, server with other Db2 products [49](#)
- components
 - installable [vii](#)
- configuration
 - Operations Center [120](#)
- configuration wizard [80](#)
- configuring
 - hub server [137](#)
 - Operations Center [137](#)
 - spoke server [138](#)
 - SSL [147](#)
 - TLS communication [147](#)
 - web browser communication [147](#)
- configuring the Operations Center
 - for client management service [164](#)

- configuring, manually [80](#), [81](#)
- configuring, server instance [80](#)
- configuring, wizard [80](#)
- Console language support [74](#)
- console mode [73](#)
- create a certificate signing request
 - third-party certificate [147](#)
- create server instance [77](#), [80](#)
- custom configuration
 - client management service [166](#)

D

- database
 - backups [94](#)
 - installing [84](#)
 - name [68](#)
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- database directories [78](#)
- database manager [54](#), [86](#)
- Db2 commands [109](#)
- Db2 directories [69](#)
- Db2 products, compatibility with the server [49](#)
- db2icrt command [81](#)
- db2profile [91](#)
- default installation directories [69](#)
- DEFINE DEVCLASS [94](#)
- device driver, IBM Spectrum Protect [vii](#), [viii](#)
- directories
 - Db2 [69](#)
 - default installation [69](#)
 - devices [69](#)
 - languages [69](#)
 - naming for server [68](#)
- directories, instance [78](#)
- disability [189](#)
- DISK device class
 - checklist for disk systems [34](#)
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- disk performance
 - checklist for active log [23](#)
 - checklist for server database [21](#)
 - checklist for server recovery log [23](#)
 - checklist for storage pools on disk [34](#)
- disk space [41](#), [44](#), [47](#)
- disk systems
 - checklist for active log [23](#)
 - checklist for server database [21](#)
 - checklist for server recovery log [23](#)
 - classification [37](#)
 - selecting [37](#)
 - storage pools on disk [34](#)
- DSMSERV FORMAT command [84](#)
- dsmserv.v6lock [94](#)

E

- email alerts
 - suspending temporarily [141](#)
- enabling communications [82](#)
- expiration
 - server option [89](#)

F

- FILE device class
 - checklist for disk systems [34](#)
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- files
 - dsmserv.opt.smp [82](#)
- first steps [77](#)
- fix packs [97](#)
- fixes [71](#)

G

- group [78](#)

H

- HALT command [94](#)
- halting the server [94](#)
- hardware requirements
 - IBM Spectrum Protect [41](#), [44](#), [47](#)
- home directory [81](#)
- HTTPS
 - password for truststore file [127](#), [158](#)
- hub server
 - configuring [137](#)

I

- IBM Installation Manager
 - uninstalling [115](#)
- IBM Knowledge Center [viii](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect
 - installation [72](#), [73](#)
 - installation packages [71](#)
 - server changes
 - Version 8.1 [ix](#)
 - uninstalling
 - in silent mode [114](#)
 - using a graphical installation wizard [113](#)
 - using command line in console mode [113](#)
 - upgrading
 - 8.1 [101](#)
 - V7.1 to V8.1 [101](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect device driver, installable package [vii](#), [viii](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect fix packs [97](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect on AIX
 - upgrading
 - V8.1 [101](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect support site [71](#)
- IBM Spectrum Protect, setting up [89](#)
- installable components [vii](#), [viii](#)
- installation directories
 - Operations Center
 - Installation Manager [127](#)
- installation log [72](#), [73](#)
- Installation Manager
 - logs directory [187](#)
- installation packages
 - Operations Center [131](#)
- installation wizard [72](#)
- installing

- installing (*continued*)
 - client management service [161](#)
 - database [84](#)
 - device support [71](#)
 - fix packs [97](#)
 - graphical user interface
 - using [72](#)
 - minimum requirements for [41](#), [44](#), [47](#)
 - Operations Center [131](#)
 - recovery log [84](#)
 - server [3](#), [71](#)
 - using command line in console mode
 - using [73](#)
 - what to know about security before [3](#)
 - what to know before [3](#)
- installing the IBM Spectrum Protect server [73](#)
- installing the server
 - silently [73](#)
- installing Operations Center [117](#)
- instance directories [78](#)
- instance user ID [68](#)
- interim fix [97](#)
- iPad
 - monitoring the storage environment [160](#)

K

- kernel parameters, tuning
 - overview [77](#)
 - suggested minimum values [78](#)
 - updating [77](#)
- keyboard [189](#)
- KILL command [94](#)
- Knowledge Center [viii](#)

L

- LANGUAGE option [74](#), [75](#)
- language package [76](#)
- language packages [74](#)
- language support [75](#)
- languages
 - set [75](#)
- license, IBM Spectrum Protect [94](#)
- licenses
 - installable package [vii](#), [viii](#)
- limitations
 - client management service [124](#)
- Linux on Power Systems (little endian)
 - system requirements [47](#)
- Linux on System z
 - system requirements [44](#)
- Linux x86_64
 - system requirements [41](#)
- log files
 - installation [187](#)
- login screen text
 - Operations Center [141](#)

M

- maintenance mode [93](#)
- maintenance updates [97](#)

- memory requirements [41](#), [44](#), [47](#)
- mobile device
 - monitoring the storage environment [160](#)
- monitoring
 - logs [95](#)
- monitoring administrator [126](#)
- multiple Db2 copies [49](#)
- multiple servers
 - upgrading
 - multiple servers [95](#)

N

- names, best practices
 - database name [68](#)
 - directories for server [68](#)
 - instance user ID [68](#)
 - server instance [68](#)
 - server name [68](#)
- new features [ix](#)

O

- offering [50](#), [126](#)
- operating system requirements
 - Operations Center [123](#)
- Operations Center
 - administrator IDs [126](#)
 - Chrome [123](#)
 - computer requirements [120](#)
 - configuring [137](#)
 - credentials for installing [127](#)
 - Firefox [123](#)
 - hub server [120](#)
 - IE [123](#)
 - installation directory [127](#)
 - installation packages [131](#)
 - installing
 - in silent mode [132](#)
 - using a graphical wizard [131](#)
 - using command line in console mode [132](#)
 - Internet Explorer [123](#)
 - language requirements [124](#)
 - login screen text [141](#)
 - opening [137](#), [160](#)
 - operating system requirements [123](#)
 - overview [119](#)
 - password for secure communications [127](#), [158](#)
 - port number [127](#), [160](#)
 - prerequisite checks [119](#)
 - rolling back to a previous version [185](#)
 - Safari [123](#)
 - spoke server [120](#), [138](#)
 - SSL [143](#), [145](#)
 - standard TCP/IP secure port [142](#)
 - system requirements [119](#)
 - troubleshooting the installation [181](#)
 - uninstalling
 - in silent mode [183](#)
 - using a graphical wizard [183](#)
 - using command line in console mode [183](#)
 - upgrading [117](#), [135](#)
 - URL [160](#)

Operations Center (*continued*)
 web browser requirements [123](#)
 web server [160](#)
options
 starting the server [89](#)
options file
 editing [82](#)
options, client
 SSLTCPADMINPORT [83](#)
 SSLTCPPOINT [83](#)
 TCPADMINPORT [83](#)
 TCPPOINT [83](#)
 TCPWINDOWSIZE [83](#)
overview
 Operations Center [117](#), [119](#)

P

package [50](#), [126](#)
package group [50](#), [126](#)
Passport Advantage [71](#)
password
 encryption [133](#)
 Operations Center [133](#)
 Operations Center truststore file [127](#), [158](#)
password for secure communications [127](#)
performance
 configuration best practices [39](#)
 Operations Center [120](#)
 user limits, setting for optimal performance [89](#)
planning, capacity
 database space requirements
 estimates based on number of files [52](#)
 estimates based storage pool capacity [54](#)
 starting size [52](#)
 recovery log space requirements
 active log mirror [66](#)
 recovery log space requirementsv [55](#)
port number
 Operations Center [127](#), [160](#)
prerequisite checks
 Operations Center [119](#)
publications [viii](#)

R

receive the signed certificate
 IBM Key Management [151](#)
 ikeycmd [157](#)
 ikeyman [151](#)
 third-party certificate [151](#), [157](#)
recovery log
 archive failover log space [66](#)
 installing [84](#)
reference, Db2 commands [109](#)
REGISTER LICENSE command [94](#)
repository [50](#), [126](#)
requirements
 client management service [124](#)
resource requirements
 Operations Center [120](#)
rollback
 Operations Center [185](#)

S

scripts
 dsmserv.rc [91](#)
 starting servers automatically [91](#)
secure communications [143](#), [145](#)
Secure Sockets Layer [143](#), [145](#)
Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)
 communication using [84](#)
 retry certificate exchange [15](#)
 Transport Layer Security (TLS) [84](#)
 troubleshooting security updates [12](#)
 what to know about security before you upgrade [3](#)
send the certificate signing request
 third-party certificate [151](#)
server
 compatibility
 Db2 products [49](#)
 naming best practices [68](#)
 performance optimization [17](#)
 starting
 automatic [91](#)
 maintenance mode [93](#)
 stand-alone mode [93](#)
 stopping [94](#)
 upgrading
 to 8.1 [101](#)
 V7.1 to V8.1 [101](#)
server active log
 checklist for disks [23](#)
server AIX
 upgrading
 V8.1 [101](#)
server archive log
 checklist for disks [23](#)
server database
 checklist for disks [21](#)
 directories [21](#)
 reorganization options [88](#)
 storage paths [21](#)
server hardware
 checklist for server system [17](#)
 checklist for storage pools on disk [34](#)
 storage technology choices [37](#)
server instance [80](#), [81](#)
server instance, creating [81](#)
server instances
 naming [68](#)
 naming best practices [68](#)
server license [94](#)
server options
 dsmserv.opt.smp [82](#)
 tailoring [82](#)
server options file
 setting [82](#)
server recovery log
 checklist for disks [23](#)
server,
 activating [89](#)
 setting up [89](#)
 starting [89](#)
server, IBM Spectrum Protect
 halting [94](#)
 options [82](#), [83](#)

- SET DBRECOVERY [94](#)
- shared memory client options [84](#)
- shared memory communications method [84](#)
- shared resources directory [50](#), [126](#)
- silent installation
 - IBM Spectrum Protect [73](#)
- software requirements
 - IBM Spectrum Protect [41](#), [44](#), [47](#)
- spoke server
 - adding [138](#)
- SSL
 - configuring [147](#)
 - password for truststore file [127](#), [158](#)
- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)
 - communication using [84](#)
 - Transport Layer Security [84](#)
- SSLTCPADMINPORT option [83](#)
- SSLTCPPOINT option [83](#)
- stand-alone mode [93](#)
- starting
 - client management service [165](#)
 - server [89](#)
- starting server
 - from user ID [91](#)
- starting servers automatically [91](#)
- startup
 - server
 - maintenance mode [93](#)
 - stand-alone mode [93](#)
- status monitoring [120](#)
- stopping
 - client management service [165](#)
 - server [94](#)
- storage pools
 - storage technology selection [37](#)
- storage technology selection [37](#)
- summary of amendments
 - Version 8.1 [ix](#)
- system requirements
 - Operations Center [119](#), [120](#), [123](#), [124](#)

T

- TCP/IP
 - setting options [83](#)
 - Version 4 [83](#)
 - Version 6 [83](#)
- TCPNODELAY option [83](#)
- TCPPOINT option [83](#)
- TCPWINDOWSIZE option [83](#)
- technical changes [ix](#)
- temporary disk space [54](#)
- temporary space [54](#)
- third-party certificate
 - create a certificate signing request [147](#)
 - receive the signed certificate [151](#), [157](#)
 - send the certificate signing request [151](#)
- time
 - server upgrade [102](#)
- TLS [143](#), [145](#)
- TLS communication
 - configuring [147](#)
- translation features [74](#)
- translations [74](#)

- Transport Layer Security (TLS) [84](#)
- Transport Layer Security protocol [143](#), [145](#)
- troubleshooting
 - Operations Center installation
 - Chinese fonts on RHEL 5 [181](#)
 - Japanese fonts on RHEL 5 [181](#)
 - Korean fonts on RHEL 5 [181](#)
- truststore file
 - deleting password [158](#)
 - Operations Center [127](#)
 - reassigning password [158](#)
- tuning
 - Operations Center [120](#)

U

- Ubuntu Server LTS [41](#)
- ulimits
 - setting
 - before server startup [89](#)
- Uninstall
 - IBM Installation Manager [115](#)
- uninstalling
 - client management service [166](#)
- uninstalling and reinstalling [114](#)
- updating [76](#), [135](#)
- upgrade
 - server
 - estimated time [102](#)
 - to 8.1 [101](#)
 - V7.1 to V8.1 [101](#)
- upgrade AIX
 - server
 - V8.1 [101](#)
- upgrading Operations Center [117](#)
- URL
 - Operations Center [160](#)
- US English [75](#)
- user ID [78](#)
- user limits
 - setting
 - before server startup [89](#)

V

- verifying installation
 - client management service [163](#)

W

- web server
 - starting [160](#)
 - stopping [160](#)
- wizard [77](#)
- worksheet
 - server space planning [51](#)



Product Number: 5725-W99
5725-W98
5725-X15